

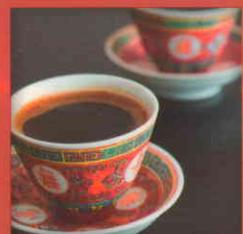
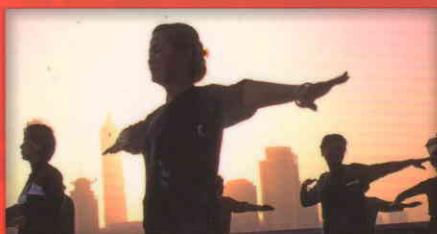
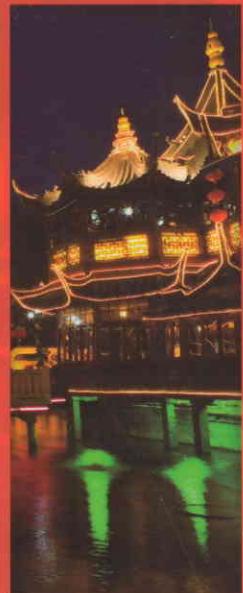
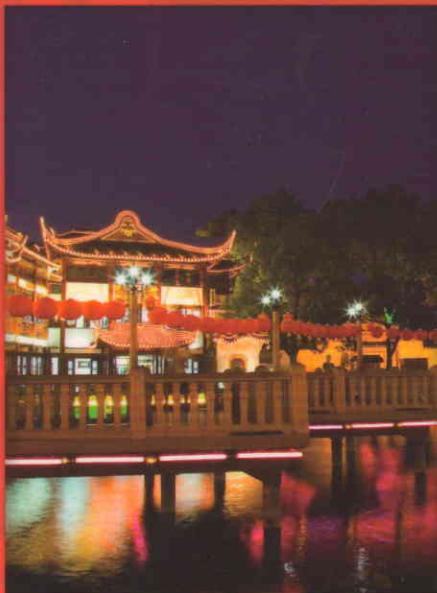
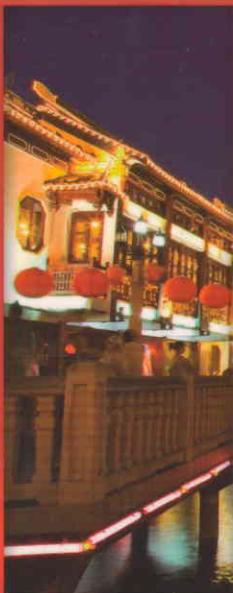
 INCLUDES
AUDIO CD

Discover **China**



STUDENT'S BOOK ONE

学生用书1



走遍中国

学生用书

Macmillan Education
Between Towns Road, Oxford, OX4 3PP
A division of Macmillan Publishers Limited
Companies and representatives throughout the world

ISBN 9780230405950

Text © Macmillan Publishers Limited and the Foreign Language Teaching and Research Press 2010
Design and illustration © Macmillan Publishers Limited and the Foreign Language Teaching and Research Press 2010
Published by arrangement with Macmillan Publishers (China) Limited

All rights reserved; no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, transmitted in any form, or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publishers.

Project Planning: Bernadette Longley, Peng Donglin
Project management: Bernadette Longley, Hou Hui
Head author: Ding Anqi
Author team: Chen Xin, Jing Lili
Academic advisors: Simon Greenall, Huang Dian, C.K. Tang
Editors: Yan Lina, Wang Jianling, Thomas McGrenery and Mei Liew

Audio materials produced by Sky Productions

The authors and publishers would like to thank the following for permission to reproduce their artwork/photographic material:

Imagemore: pp19 (rm), 20 (br), 22 (bl), 23 (tr), 24 (background), 26 (a-c, e), 30 (t), 34 (background), 38 (la, b, d), 41 (ld), 42 (t), 44 (background), 49 (a, b), 50 (b), 54 (background), 56 (ltl, ltr, lm), 59 (rt), 60 (lt, rb), 62 (l), 63 (r), 66 (b), 67 (lt), 68 (background), 75 (la, c), 76 (t), 77 (top), 78 (background), 85 (la,b), 86 (lb), 88 (background), 90 (c), 95 (lb), 96 (rb), 98 (background), 104 (background), 112 (background), 116 (b, e), 119 (lb), 120 (l), 122 (l, background), 126 (b, d, e, f), 129 (b, c, d), 130 (l, bottom), 132 (background), 134 (ml, mr), 139 (la-d), 141 (t), 142 (background), 144 (r), 148 (background), 151 (br), 154 (bl); Tuweimei: pp26(d), 31 (a-d), 36 (la, r), 38 (lc, l, bottom), 41 (lb, c), 46 (rt), 48 (lt, rt), 49 (c, d), 56 (rt), 57 (la-f), 59 (rm), 62 (ra-c), 75 (lb, d), 85 (lc, d), 90 (a, b, d), 92 (ba-e), 95 (la, c, d), 100 (a, c, e), 103 (r), 106 (la, d), 109 (la, c, d), 116 (a, c, d, f), 119 (la, c, d), 126 (a, c), 129 (a), 134 (tr), 136 (a, b, c, d), 150, 151 (tl, tr), 152 (b), 153 (l, r), 154 (a-d), 155 (t), 156, 157 (tl, tr), 158 (b), 159 (r), 160 (br), 161 (t); Top Photo Corporation: pp14 (bottom), 17, 27, 37, 47, 81, 91, 105, 115, 122 (lc), 134 (tl), 135; China Foto Press: pp13 (bl), 33 (r), 36 (c), 40 (lb), 49 (l), 61, 109 (b), 110 (top), 142 (lt, lb); Corbis: pp31 (b) © Natacha Connan/Didier Baverel/Kipa/Corbis, 54 (br) © BARBARA GINDL/epa/Corbis, 54 (bl) © Cat's Collection/Corbis, 71 © Keren Su/Corbis, 125 © Justin Guariglia/Corbis; Photolibrary: pp151 (bl), 157 (tl); Simon Lorenz: p52.

Cover photographs by Panorama Media (tr), (m), (bl); Tuweimei (tl), (br)

Commissioned photographs © Macmillan Publishers Limited and the Foreign Language Teaching and Research Press 2010

We would also like to thank the following reviewers and teachers for their valuable and insightful comments:

Lening Liu (Professor in Chinese Language and Program Director at Columbia University), Huang Dian (Senior lecturer in Chinese at the University of Westminster and Chair of the British Chinese Language Teaching Society) and her pilot class, Dr. Song Lianyi (Principal Teaching Fellow in Chinese, China & Inner Asia Department, School of Oriental and African Studies, University of London), Liao Liyun (Modern Foreign Language Academic Resources Coordinator, University College London) and her pilot class, and Liang Min-Min (Lecturer in Chinese, Massachusetts Institute of Technology), Betty Hung (Assistant Language Instructor, School of Chinese, The University of Hong Kong).

These materials may contain links for third party websites. We have no control over, and are not responsible for, the contents of such third party websites. Please use care when accessing them.

Although we have tried to trace and contact copyright holders before publication, in some cases this has not been possible. If contacted, we will be pleased to rectify any errors or omissions at the earliest opportunity.

Printed and bound in China

2015 2014 2013 2012
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2

Discover China

STUDENT'S BOOK ONE

学生用书1




MACMILLAN



Introduction

Discover China is a four-level Mandarin Chinese course, specially designed for beginner to intermediate level students studying Chinese in English-speaking countries. It employs a communicative and integrated approach to language learning. Emphasis is placed on communication in real contexts through pair work, group work and a variety of independent and integrated activities to help students become confident Chinese language speakers.

Key features

Discover China's unique communicative course design includes a number of distinctive features:

- **Topic-driven content in real-life contexts** gets students engaged and motivated. The topics in each book are organized around the lives and travel experiences of five young students in China.
- **A truly communicative approach** lets students learn the language by using it in real-life situations, providing them with the tools they need to communicate in Chinese naturally.
- **Structured and effective learning design** based on the sequence “presentation, practice and production”, with activities moving from controlled practice to personalized tasks, facilitates effective learning of the language.
- **Systematic vocabulary and grammar development** comes through topic-based practice and extension exercises. The lexical syllabus is based on levels 1-4 of the *Hanyu Shuiping Kaoshi* (HSK test) and the grammatical syllabus takes students up to the Vantage level (level B2) of the Common European Framework.
- **Student-centred grammar learning supplemented with detailed grammar reference** allows students to discover the rules for themselves through identifying patterns in the language samples. The grammar reference provides comprehensive and detailed explanations.
- **Meaningful and integrated character writing practice** through grouping characters with common radicals. These high-frequency characters are presented within the context of the unit theme.
- **Insights into Chinese culture**, through “Cultural Corner” sections linked to the unit topics, promoting a deeper cultural understanding. Fascinating full-colour photos, showing the real China, provide visual appeal and draw students into this diverse culture.
- **Simplified Chinese characters** are used to facilitate learning of the written language used by the majority of Chinese speakers.
- **Pinyin matched to the word level** instead of individual characters helps students understand how to write and space pinyin meaningfully. *Discover China* follows the official pinyin orthography of mainland China. All pinyin shows the character's original tone, except in those parts of the pronunciation and speaking section where special rules about tonal change are introduced.
- **Extra pair work activities** for each unit provide additional communicative speaking practice.
- **Supported by free online resources** including teacher's books, assessment tasks, unit quizzes, extra character writing sheets and more.

Workbook

The Workbook provides extensive consolidation of the language skills and knowledge taught in the Student's Book.

Each Workbook unit features clear language objectives which correspond with the Student's Book unit structure and activities. A wide variety of vocabulary and grammar exercises, as well as extra reading and listening activities, provide practice of the core language presented in the Student's Book. Writing practice sections give students the option to extend their Chinese character writing skills beyond the Student's Book requisites. A self-assessment at the end of each unit using “I can...” descriptors enables students to reflect on their individual progress.

Characteristics of each level

Books 1 and 2 cover basic language relating to everyday topics. The focus is on listening and speaking, although there is a writing activity at end of each lesson 2. Character writing practice is available in both the Student's Book and Workbook to help students learn how to write Chinese characters with the correct stroke order.

Book 1 is for beginners who have not studied any Chinese. To avoid overwhelming students with character reading at the very beginning, pinyin is placed above all Chinese words and characters to provide the necessary language support. However, to help students develop character recognition skills, pinyin does not appear for conversations and passages in the Workbook. Activities in the online unit quizzes, which simulate test questions from the HSK test, have no pinyin.

Book 2 follows on naturally from Book 1. Pinyin is used only in activities with new words and phrases, and the activities in the pronunciation and speaking section of each unit. Most other activities in the book do not carry pinyin. However, versions of all the main conversations and reading passages with pinyin are available for download from *Discover China's* free resources website.

Books 3 and 4 cover language from school life and the work environment. The focus is on the development of language skills, which is conducted through various approaches including guided writing. The lessons contain activities to further enhance students' language skills in all areas across different contexts and functions. A new guided writing section teaches students how to compose natural texts following authentic-like texts. The conversations and reading passages are longer, and pinyin only appears in each unit's vocabulary boxes.

Storylines

- **Book 1** presents the fundamentals of the Chinese language, following the characters' day-to-day lives in Beijing. From simple introductions to going shopping, eating out or playing sports, students encounter a broad range of situations and learn the basic language skills they require.
- **Book 2** includes "survival Chinese" for travel and living in China, as the characters hit the road on their winter holidays. They see the Terracotta Warriors in Xi'an and try authentic Sichuan food in Chengdu, make new friends and broaden their knowledge of Chinese to handle typical subjects such as food and drink, hotels, sightseeing and going to the doctor.
- **Book 3** takes a deeper look at China's diverse culture. Steve lands his dream job and is sent on assignment as a photojournalist to exciting places all over China. Amanda pursues her love of Chinese history and undertakes a research project on a major historical figure. This provides students with rich exposure to the use of Chinese language across various cultural and social contexts.
- **Book 4** prepares students for using Chinese for work-related purposes. Mark takes up an internship at a Chinese organization in London, acting as a guide for a delegation from China. Wang Yu and Yeong-min volunteer at a summer camp in China, helping foreign students to understand Chinese language and culture. All three gain valuable experience in working with colleagues and customers, and dealing with different situations.



Unit structure

Student Book 1 | Unit 8 How much is it? 多少钱?

LESSON | 1

Vocabulary and listening

A Listen again and check the true statements.

- 1 安娜要买红色的裙子。
- 2 安娜喜欢蓝色。
- 3 安娜买了一条黑色的裙子。
- 4 裙子的价钱是七十九块。
- 5 裙子的价钱不贵。

B Listen to the conversation.

Anna and Wang Yu are buying some clothes at a market.

C Now listen again and say the colours.

D Listen again and check the true statements.

E Listen again and say the clothes items in the order you hear them.

F Listen to the conversation.

售货员：请问你要买什么衣服？
安娜：我要买一条裙子。
售货员：请来这边……
安娜：这条怎么样？
售货员：二百七十九块。
安娜：太红了！
售货员：这条可以吗？
安娜：我不喜欢红色。
售货员：对不起，这个价钱是便宜的。
安娜：旁边这件呢？
售货员：这件呢？

G Listen again and check the true statements.

H Work in pairs. Act out the conversation in Activity 3. Use different colours, clothes items and prices.

Pre-listening

Pre-listening activities are designed to pre-teach the key words/expressions, or activate learners' background knowledge about the unit topic in preparation for the conversation.

Presentation dialogue

Meaningful and authentic conversation between the resident characters sets the context for vocabulary and language presentation.

Pronunciation

Difficult pronunciation points for English speakers are presented and practised in context to prepare students for communicative activities in the unit.

Chinese to go

Simple and useful colloquial expressions or language "chunks" of immediate use are provided to learners.

Post-listening

Comprehension questions are used to check understanding.

Controlled activities allow students to practise the target words/expressions, and role-play the conversation.

New words list

Target words are set out in the order they appear in the conversation.

Pre-reading

Pre-reading activities are designed to pre-teach the key words, or activate students' background knowledge about the unit topic in preparation for the reading passage.

Pronunciation and speaking

A Listen and repeat the tones of —— change?

Now listen and say the words.

B Listen and check the correct tones for ——.

C Listen and match the tones for ——.

Now say the words aloud.

D Listen and say the words.

Work in pairs.

Student A: You are a customer in a clothes shop. You like a clothes item but it is too expensive.

Student B: You are a shop assistant. You agree to sell it at a lower price.

A: 我要买……

B: 请来这边。这条怎么样？

A: 不错。多少钱？

B: 好吧。

A: 给你钱。

B: 谢谢。

LESSON | 2

Reading and writing

A Match the pictures with the words.



B Read Steve's blog and answer the questions.

- 1 史蒂夫喜欢看书吗?
2 史蒂夫买的裤子多少钱?
3 他上个月买了什么?
4 小小是谁?

C CHINESE TO GO Talking about shopping

打折吗? Any discount?

Silíng kànkan. Feed free to take a look.

Pre-reading

Pre-reading activities are designed to pre-teach the key words, or activate students' background knowledge about the unit topic in preparation for the reading passage.

Reading

Reading texts cover a wide range of text types relevant to students' everyday lives, such as diaries, text messages, blogs and online profiles.

Post-reading

Controlled, guided and freer activities allow learners to practise the target language in a sequence that is most effective for learning.

Grammar reference

Grammar reference at the back of the book provides detailed explanation of the grammar rules as a handy resource for both teachers and students.

Unit 8

Measure words

The measure word 个 is used extensively for people or objects, both real and abstract.

People:	yi 一 个人	jiè 叫 朋友	a friend
Real objects:	yi 一 件 衣服	jiè 一件 衬衫	an apple
Abstract objects:	yi 一 个 地点	jiè 一个 地点	a result

The measure word 片 is used for clothing, objects in general or abstract things.

Clothing:	yi 一 片 毛衣	jiè 一件 毛衣	a sweater
Objects in general:	yi 一 片 礼物	jiè 一片 礼物	a gift
Abstract things:	yi 一 片 工作	jiè 一片 工作	a piece of work

The measure word 套 is used for long and narrow objects, including animals or body parts.

Long and narrow objects:	yi 一 套 裤子	jiè 一套 裤子	a pair of trousers
Animals:	yi 一 套 鱼	jiè 一条 鱼	a fish
Body parts:	yi 一 套 眼	jiè 一条 眼	an eye

The measure word 双 is used for things that come in pairs, including body parts.

Body parts:	yi 一 双 手	jiè 一双手	a pair of hands
Objects:	yi 一 双 衣服	jiè 一双 衣服	a pair of socks

Numerals 二 / 两

二 is used:

- when counting, e.g. 二 三,
- for expressing ordinal arrangement, e.g. 第二个人
- as the last digit of a numerical expression, e.g. 二十九

两 is used for expressing quantity, e.g. 两本书

168 Grammar reference

Communication activity

Meaningful and realistic communication in relevant contexts is facilitated through role-plays and speaking tasks.

LESSON | 3

Communication activity

You are going to set up a website for a designer clothing store, targeting Chinese customers. Think about the following:

- the selection of clothes that you will sell online
- the prices of similar clothes in your local shops
- the prices in RMB
- name, telephone number, email and website of your online store
- date you plan to launch the online store

Make notes and rough designs for the pages of your online store.

Present the pages of your store to another group.

Turn to pages 163 and 169 for more speaking practice.

Cultural Corner

To bargain or not to bargain?

For westerners who are used to fixed price bargaining in their home country, the concept of haggling may feel unfamiliar. However, it is a good idea to bargain in China, as tourists are often offered an inflated price in markets, small shops, restaurants and sometimes even hotels.

Here are some bargaining tips if you are in China:

- Learn a few common Chinese phrases, such as "it's too expensive" and "can you make it cheaper?"
- Take your time. Never buy anything at the first place you go to. Always shop around to compare prices.
- Decide how much you are willing to spend on an item before making an offer. If your offer is not accepted, try walking away. You will usually be called back for another round of negotiation if the shop is willing to sell.

Cultural Corner

Cultural points linked to the unit topic enable a greater understanding and appreciation of Chinese life and culture.

Practice writing common characters following the correct stroke order prepares students for writing Chinese.

Language in use

Grammar points are presented and practised through an inductive or "discovery" approach, drawing on students' existing knowledge.

Complete the sentences.

史蒂夫 _____ 北京的书店。

2. _____ 很远。

3. 他给哥哥 _____ 和 _____ 的生日。

4. 每个周末 _____ 都有很多人。

5. 每个星期天早上他都在 _____ 买东西。

Language in use

Measure words

Look at the examples for using measure words.

个	件	条	双	件
人	人	毛衣	袜子	裙子
people	person	sweater	socks	skirt
件	件	件	双	条
礼物	礼物	T恤	路	时候
gift	gift	T-shirt	road	time
条	条	条	双	条
鱼	鱼	鱼	双	条
鱼	fish	fish	双	条
双	双	双	双	双
腿	腿	腿	双	条
腿	leg	leg	双	条

Read the list of clothes that Wang Yu has bought, and answer the questions.

九月一日	大衣	¥ 500.00
九月五日	毛衣	¥ 160.00
九月九日	T恤	¥ 120.00
十一月七日	裙子	¥ 38.00
十一月十日	T恤	¥ 38.00
十二月十二日	裤子	¥ 135.00

- 王玉买的 大衣 多少钱？
- 王玉 九月五日 买了 什么？
- 她 买的 裙子 多少钱？
- 王玉 十二月十二日 买了 什么？

Write a blog about your own life.

95 Unit 8 Lesson 2

Character writing

Common radicals in characters from the unit are introduced and practised to build students' vocabulary.

Character writing

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radical?

Radical	Meaning	Example
贝	clothes	裙
贝	shell	贝

Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

衫 贵 村 货

Match the words with the meanings.

- | | |
|-------|----------------------|
| 1. 袜子 | a skirt |
| 2. 裙子 | shopping |
| 3. 购物 | a shopping assistant |
| 4. 背脊 | trousers |

Trace the characters in the boxes.



Vocabulary extension

Match the pictures with the words.



Vocabulary list

售货员	shòuhuàyùn n.	shop assistant
买	mǎi v.	buy
衣服	yīfú n.	clothes
条	tiáo n.	measure word
裤子	kuàizǐ n.	skirt
这边	dāizhān pron.	this way
红	hóng adj.	red
蓝色	lánse n.	blue
黑色	hēisè n.	black
好看	hàochāng adj.	good-looking
试	shí v.	try

Review and practice

Write questions about the underlined parts of the sentence.

- 我 灭 了一 件 毛衣。
- 安娜 去 了 北京。
- 明天 是 王玉 的 生日。
- 王玉 喜欢 白色。

Complete the passage with 二 and 两.

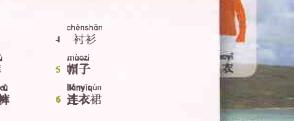
- 三月 _____ 日，我和 _____ 去了 _____。朋友 _____ 买了一件衣服，_____ 双鞋。和 _____ 张生日卡。

Circle the odd word.

- | | | | |
|-------|----|----|-----|
| 1. 红色 | 白色 | 黑色 | 书店 |
| 2. 黄色 | 绿色 | 紫色 | 商店 |
| 3. 两 | 三 | 四 | 五 |
| 4. 衣服 | 裙子 | 裤子 | 连衣裙 |

Vocabulary extension

More topic-related words are introduced for flexible learning.



Vocabulary list

All target words are presented in black and non-target words in colour for easy reference.

Short, simple examples help students analyse and discover the grammar rules.

Expressing past tense using 在 T

Look at the sentences.

Adverbial Subject Adverbial Verb/Particle Object

Bàngwǔ wǒ mǎi le 表示动作
Xǐngfēimǐn wǒ qù le 表示去向
Tā tāo le 表示完成
Wǒ zài Měiguó zhù le 表示地点

Wǒ zài Měiguó zhù le 表示时间

Now check the two correct explanations.

- T is used after a verb.
- T is used to indicate the completion of an action.
- T is always used before a number.

Write the sentences in Chinese.

- He has studied Chinese for three years.
- She bought a pair of black shoes.
- They went to Shanghai.

Turn to page 168 for grammar reference.

Exercises allow students to practise and consolidate the rules.

Review and practice

Builds on language acquisition by recycling previously learnt target language, through which students can also assess their progress.

Unit 8

Decide the colour and price for the following clothes.

Student A colour	Student B colour
1. 衣服	2. 衣服
3. 衣服	4. 衣服
5. 衣服	6. 衣服
7. 衣服	8. 衣服

Are your answers correct?

Answer Student B's questions about your clothes.

Ask Student B about these clothes names:



What are they?

What colour are they?

How much are they?

What size are they?

What material are they made of?

What shape are they?

What style are they?

What brand are they?

What pattern are they?

What texture are they?

What design are they?

What pattern are they?

What texture are they?

What design are they?

What pattern are they?

What texture are they?

What design are they?

What pattern are they?

What texture are they?

What design are they?

What pattern are they?

What texture are they?

What design are they?

What pattern are they?

What texture are they?

What design are they?

What pattern are they?

What texture are they?

What design are they?

What pattern are they?

What texture are they?

What design are they?

What pattern are they?

What texture are they?

What design are they?

What pattern are they?

What texture are they?

What design are they?

What pattern are they?

What texture are they?

What design are they?

What pattern are they?

What texture are they?

What design are they?

What pattern are they?

What texture are they?

What design are they?

What pattern are they?

What texture are they?

What design are they?

What pattern are they?

What texture are they?

What design are they?

What pattern are they?

What texture are they?

What design are they?

What pattern are they?

What texture are they?

What design are they?

What pattern are they?

What texture are they?

What design are they?

What pattern are they?

What texture are they?

What design are they?

What pattern are they?

What texture are they?

What design are they?

What pattern are they?

What texture are they?

What design are they?

What pattern are they?

What texture are they?

What design are they?

What pattern are they?

What texture are they?

What design are they?

What pattern are they?

What texture are they?

Contents

Title	Unit Topic	Listening and Reading	Speaking and Writing
Getting started Experiencing Chinese <small>page 10</small>	A brief introduction to the Chinese language	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Identifying the four tones Identifying sentences in Chinese Introduction to Chinese characters 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Introduction to radicals and using the dictionary The basic strokes The seven rules of stroke order
Unit 1 你好! Hello! <small>page 17</small>	Greetings	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Identifying people's names and greetings Identifying surnames and given names Learning about Chinese names and meanings 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Exchanging greetings Introducing yourself Asking people's names Writing Chinese names
Unit 2 你是哪里人? Where are you from? <small>page 27</small>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Countries Nationalities 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Identifying someone's nationality People and their nationalities 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Asking for and giving information about nationalities Describing people, where they live and where they are from
Unit 3 你做什么工作? What do you do? <small>page 37</small>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Occupations Family members 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Identifying someone's occupation Identifying information about family members A letter about one's family 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Asking and answering questions about occupations Asking and answering questions about family members Describing one's family members and their occupations
Unit 4 他真高! He's so tall! <small>page 47</small>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> People's appearances Favourites 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Understanding information about people's appearance Online profile describing favourite people and animal 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Describing people's appearances Writing a personal profile
Review 1 <small>page 57</small>			
Unit 5 这是我的电话号码。 Here's my phone number. <small>page 61</small>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Addresses Contact numbers 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Identifying contact numbers Identifying postal and email addresses Text messages 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Asking for and giving information about contact numbers and addresses Writing addresses, telephone numbers and email addresses Responding to a text message
Unit 6 今天几号? What's the date today? <small>page 71</small>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Birthdays Invitations 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Identifying days of the week Identifying months and dates Daily activities on a weekly planner 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Asking for and saying dates and days Making invitations Creating personal calendars

Grammar and Vocabulary	Pronunciation	Cultural Corner	Character Practice
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Words used for classroom expressions Numbers 1 to 10 	Introduction to pinyin and the four tones		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Word order of Chinese sentences (I) Verbs 叫, 姓, 是 Questions ending with 呢 Greeting words Words used to introduce people 	The four tones	Is your surname Ding or Yuan?	Radicals 亼 and 女
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Yes/no questions ending with 吗 Questions with interrogative pronoun 哪里 / 哪 Negative adverb 不 Country names, nationalities 	The four tones	Is he speaking Chinese?	Radicals 口 and 日
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Adverbs 也 / 都 Word order of Chinese sentences (II) Pronouns as modifiers (+的) Occupations, family members 	The finals: a, e, i	Times change, job preferences change!	Radicals 𠂇 and 𠀤 (right)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Interrogative pronoun 谁 Numbers in Chinese Asking about age using 多大 真 / 很 + adjective Adjectives to describe people's appearance 	The finals: ao, uei, en	I was born in the Year of the Horse.	Radicals 土 and 𩊱
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Question word 多少 Word order of Chinese addresses Telephone and room numbers Text message terms Words for addresses and contact numbers 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The tones of 不 The number "1" 	The Chinese way of thinking: from large to small	Radicals 𠂇 and 𠮾
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Months and dates Sentences without verbs Making invitations using 请 Dates, days of the week and months, daily activities 	The initials: j, q, x	Lucky numbers in China	Radicals 月 and 𠂇

Title	Unit Topic	Listening and Reading	Speaking and Writing
Unit 7 八点见! See you at eight! page 81	• Time • Appointments	• Identifying time expressions • Schedules and daily activities • Activities on a weekend planner	• Asking for and telling the time • Making appointments • Creating a weekend planner
Unit 8 多少钱? How much is it? page 91	• Clothes • Shopping	• Identifying clothes, colours and prices • A blog about life in Beijing	• Talking about clothes • Asking for items, prices and bargaining when shopping • Writing a blog
Review 2 page 101			
Unit 9 不远! It's not far! page 105	• Locations • Advertisements	• Identifying locations and directions of places • Advertisements for student housing	• Describing locations • Asking for and giving directions • Writing an advertisement for a house or flat
Unit 10 坐火车吧。 Let's take the train. page 115	Transportation	• Identifying different types of transport • Travel plans	• Talking about types of transport • Discussing which types of transport to take • Completing an email invitation
Unit 11 我会跳舞。 I can dance. page 125	• Sports • Likes and dislikes	• Identifying different types of sport • A lifestyle questionnaire	• Asking and answering questions about sports • Talking about likes and dislikes • Answering a questionnaire • Describing one's recreational activities
Unit 12 我们去看京剧。 We're going to the Beijing opera. page 135	Holiday plans	• Identifying preferences for holiday plans • Online chat messages	• Asking and answering questions about holiday plans • Responding to an online chat message
Review 3 page 145			
Language support Pair work activities	page 149 pages 150 and 156	Grammar reference Picture captions	page 162 page 171

Grammar and Vocabulary	Pronunciation	Cultural Corner	Character Practice
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Adverbial expressions of time Different ways of telling the time Expressing future tense with 要 Words for time, daily activities 	Difference between "u" and "ü"	Too late or too early?	Radicals 门 and 足
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Measure words Numerals 二 and 两 Expressing past tense using 了 Clothes items, colours, places in a city 	The tones of —	To bargain or not to bargain?	Radicals 扌 and 贝
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Expressing existence using 有 Asking questions using 有没有 Expressing locations with the verb 在 Directions, places and types of student housing 	Retroflex "r"	How far is really far?	Radicals 木 and 丿
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Alternative questions with 还是 Questions ending with 好吗 Expressing superlatives with 最 Using the particle 吧 Modes of transport and holiday activities 	Difference between "q" and "ch"	China—a kingdom of bicycles	Radicals 又 and 尸
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Using modal verbs 可以 and 会 Pivotal sentences Talking about past actions with 过 Types of sports, abilities 	Difference between "zh" and "ch"	Dance: a popular pastime	Radicals 王 and 扌
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Expressing alternatives using 或者 and 还是 Expressing regular events with 每……都…… Cities in China, holiday activities 	Sentence intonation	Chinese kung fu	Radicals 犭 and 禾

Pinyin guide

page 172

English translations

page 173

Vocabulary list

page 178

GETTING STARTED

Experiencing Chinese

LESSON | 1

Pronunciation and listening

Putonghua and pinyin

Putonghua is the Chinese expression for Mandarin Chinese. It means "common language". Pinyin is a phonetic spelling system for Chinese characters, which uses the Roman alphabet. Pinyin is not just useful for foreign learners of Chinese, it is also used to teach the standard pronunciation of Putonghua to Chinese people who speak other dialects.

- 1 Listen to the following words in Chinese. Check the four words containing sounds which don't exist in English.

qing xie nü
 ren ta

Chinese pronunciation

Most Chinese syllables consist of an "initial" consonant followed by a "final". Finals consist of vowels, which may be followed by *-n* or *-ng*. Finals may occur without initials. Note that not all the initials and finals can be combined.

Chinese initials:

b / p / m / f / d / t / n / l / g / k / h / j / q / x / zh / ch / sh / r / z / c / s

Chinese finals:

a / o / e / i / u / ü / ai / ei / ao / ou / ia / ie / ua / uo / üe / iao / iou / uai / uei / an / en / in / ian / uan / uen / ün / üan / ang / eng / ing / iang / uang / ueng / ong / iong / er / ê / -i / -i

Chinese pronunciation is not especially difficult for English speakers because most of the sounds are quite similar to those in English. There are only a few sounds that are tricky for English speakers, for example, q, x, r and ü.

► Turn to page 172 for more information about pinyin.



- 2 Listen and circle the characters with the same tones.

1 请 写 听
2 一 十 七

Tones

Chinese is a tonal language. There is a tone for every syllable. We can use different tones with the same syllable to express different meanings.

Mandarin has four tones. It is important to pronounce the tones correctly because change of tones will change the meaning. The four tones are depicted graphically with this chart, to show where each tone occurs in tonal space. There is also a neutral tone in spoken Mandarin. It is light, flat and should not be emphasized. The neutral tone is used at the end of a phrase or with sentence particles.



The following table illustrates tone markings above the sound *ma* and describes how each tone is pronounced:

Tone	Mark	Description
first	mā	high and level
second	má	starts medium in tone, then rises to the top
third	mǎ	starts low, dips to the bottom, then rises towards the top
fourth	mà	starts at the top, then falls sharply and strongly to the bottom
neutral	ma	flat, with no emphasis



- 3 Listen and check the tones you hear.

1 zhōng zhòng 3 nǐ ní
2 wén wèn 4 hǎo háo

Vocabulary and speaking

-  4 Listen and say the words. Make sure you use the correct tones.

xué	study	kàn	看	look, see
dú	read	wèn	问	ask
xiě	write	shuō	说	say, speak
tīng	listen	qǐng	请	please

► Turn to page 14 for more classroom expressions.

-  5 Match the Chinese phrases with their English translations.

Nǐ hǎo ma	a I'm sorry.
1 你好吗?	b You're welcome.
Lǎoshī hǎo!	c Hello, teacher!
2 老师好!	d It doesn't matter.
Zàijiàn	e Goodbye!
3 再见!	f How are you?
Xièxie	g Thank you!
4 谢谢!	
Bù kèqi	
5 不客气。	
Duìbuqǐ	
6 对不起。	
Méiguānxi	
7 没关系!	

Now listen and say the phrases.



- 6 Listen and say the numbers.

yī	èr	sān	sì	wǔ
一	二	三	四	五
one	two	three	four	five
liù	qī	bā	jiǔ	shí
六	七	八	九	十
six	seven	eight	nine	ten

Now check the numbers as you hear them.

- 7 Match the numbers.

1	—	a	1
2	liù	b	3
3	bā	c	9
4	qī	d	6
5	sān	e	7
6	jiǔ	f	8

- 8 Work in pairs.

Student A: Write down three numbers between 1 and 10. Do not show Student B your numbers.

Student B: Say three numbers between 1 and 10.

Student A: Listen for the numbers you have written. Clap when you hear your numbers.

Now change roles.

► Turn to page 149 for more numbers.

LESSON 2

Reading

- 1 Look at the sentences in different oriental languages.
Check the sentence in Chinese.

- 1 彼は田中一男、日本人です。
- 2 그는 김대성이라고 합니다. 한국 사람입니다.
- 3 他叫王明，是中国人。
- 4 Ông đã gọi là Huang-fu, là người Việt Nam.

Chinese characters

A Chinese character (*Hanzi*) is a logogram used in writing Chinese. The *Kangxi Dictionary*, the most authoritative Chinese dictionary since the 18th century, contains approximately 47,035 Chinese characters, although a large number of these are rarely-used variants accumulated throughout history. Studies carried out in China have shown that literacy in the Chinese language requires a knowledge of only between 800 and 3500 characters.

In the Chinese writing system, characters are morphosyllabic, meaning that each character usually corresponds with a spoken syllable with a basic meaning. Chinese characters have also been used in other languages, most significantly Japanese, Korean and Vietnamese.

People often think Chinese characters represent pictures of the meaning, and from this we can deduce the meanings of the characters without being able to read them. However, only about 600 Chinese characters are derived from pictures, and even these characters have been standardized, simplified, and stylized to make them easier to write. As a result, we cannot easily see how the modern characters are derived from the original pictures. The graphics in the table illustrate some examples.

sun (日)



moon (月)



cloud (云)



rain (雨)



- 2 Guess the meanings of the characters.
Use the pictograms to help you.

- 1 木 (tree) 林 =
- 2 日 (sun) 明 =
- 3 人 (person) 众 =
- 4 火 (fire) 焚 =

- 3 Look at the characters. The parts in red are the radicals of the characters.

妈 mā

您 nín

厅 tīng

园 yuán

Radicals and using the dictionary

Chinese characters have radicals. To look up words in a Chinese–English dictionary, we need to:

- identify the radical
- find the radical in the radical index
- find the whole character in the character index
- look up the character in the main dictionary

4 Work in pairs and use your dictionary.

- 1 Find the radical of the characters in Activity 3 in the radical index.
- 2 Find the whole character in the character index.
- 3 Note the page number of the character and then look it up.

Now say what these characters mean.

5 Look up the characters in your dictionary. (The radicals are in red.)

你 写
问 请

Character writing

Chinese characters: the basic strokes

We write Chinese with some basic strokes, six of which are shown below.

Basic stroke	English	Example
丶	dot	小 六
一	horizontal	一 三
	vertical	十 中
フ	downward left	人 大
フ	downward right	八 人
フ	upward	打 江

These strokes combine to form more complex strokes.

Compare the simple strokes of 一 and 人, with the complex strokes of 露 (dew).

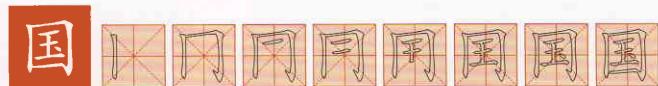
Remember that Chinese–English dictionaries are partly organized by the number of strokes each character has.

Chinese characters: the seven rules of stroke order

We always write character strokes in the same order, following seven rules:

- 1 horizontal before vertical 十 丰
- 2 downward left before downward right 人 八
- 3 from left to right 川 朋
- 4 from top to bottom 三 月
- 5 from outside to inside 丁 问
- 6 from outside to inside, then closing 回 国
- 7 middle before two sides 小 水

6 Trace the characters in the boxes.



Classroom expressions



Classroom expressions used by teachers

Shàngkè

上课

Class has begun.

Qǐng jìn

请 进。

Please come in.

Gēn wǒ shuō

跟 我 说。

Repeat after me.

Duì

对！

That's right!

Qǐng huídá wèntí

请 回答 问题。

Please answer the questions.

Zài shuō yī biàn

再 说 一 遍。

Say it again.

Dǎ kāi shū dào dì yè

打开 书 到 第 页。

Open your books to page

Qǐng kàn hēibǎn shū

请 看 黑板 / 书。

Please look at the board / your books.

Liǎng rén Sān rén yī zǔ zuò

两 人 / 三 人 一 组 做

Work in pairs /groups of three to ...

Nǐmen míngbai ma

你 们 明 白 吗 ?

Do you understand?

Xiàkè

下课。

Qǐng zuò

请 坐。

Class is over.

Please sit down.

Qǐng tīng

请 听。

Please listen.

Hěn hǎo

很 好 !

Well done!

Qǐng dú kèwén

请 读 课 文。

Please read the text.

Yǒu wèntí ma

有 问 题 吗 ?

Do you have any questions?





Classroom expressions used by students

Dì jǐ shēng
第几 声?

Which tone?

Wǒ bù míngbai
我不 明白。

I don't understand.

Wǒ yǒu yī gè wèntí
我有 一个 问题。

I have a question.

Qǐng zài shuō yī biān
请 再 说 一 遍。

Can you please repeat that?

zěnme dú
..... 怎么 读?

How do you pronounce ...?

de pīnyīn shì shénme
..... 的 拼音 是 什 么?

What is the pinyin for ...?

hànzì zěnme xiě
..... 汉字 怎么 写?

How do you write ...?

yòng Yīngyǔ Hánnyǔ zěnme shuō
..... 用 英语 / 汉语 怎么 说?

How do you say ... in English/Chinese?

Wǒ kěyǐ qù xǐshǒujian ma
我可以 去 洗 手 间 吗?

Can I go to the toilet?

Duìbuqǐ wǒ chídào le
对不起, 我 迟 到 了。

Sorry I'm late.

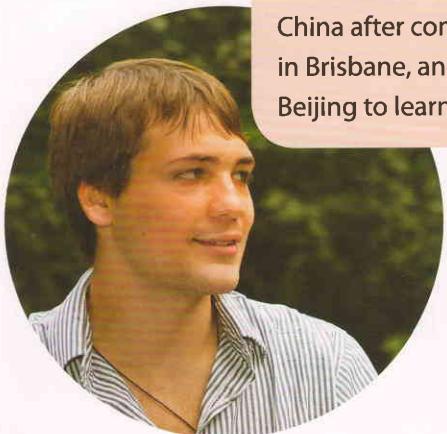
Xièxie lǎoshī
谢 谢 老 师!

Thank you, teacher!

zěnme dú

..... 怎么 读?

Meet the characters



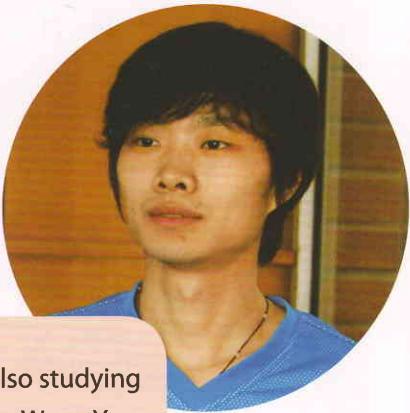
Mǎkè
Mark Johnson (马克) comes from Australia. He went on holiday to China after completing high school in Brisbane, and decided to stay in Beijing to learn Chinese.



Wáng Yù
Wang Yu (王玉) was born in Beijing. She is at the same university as the others, studying music. She and Anna are language partners, as Wang Yu also wants to improve her English.



Ānnà
Anna Pollard (安娜) is Mark's classmate, from New York. She is spending a year in China before returning to the US to complete her studies in International Relations.



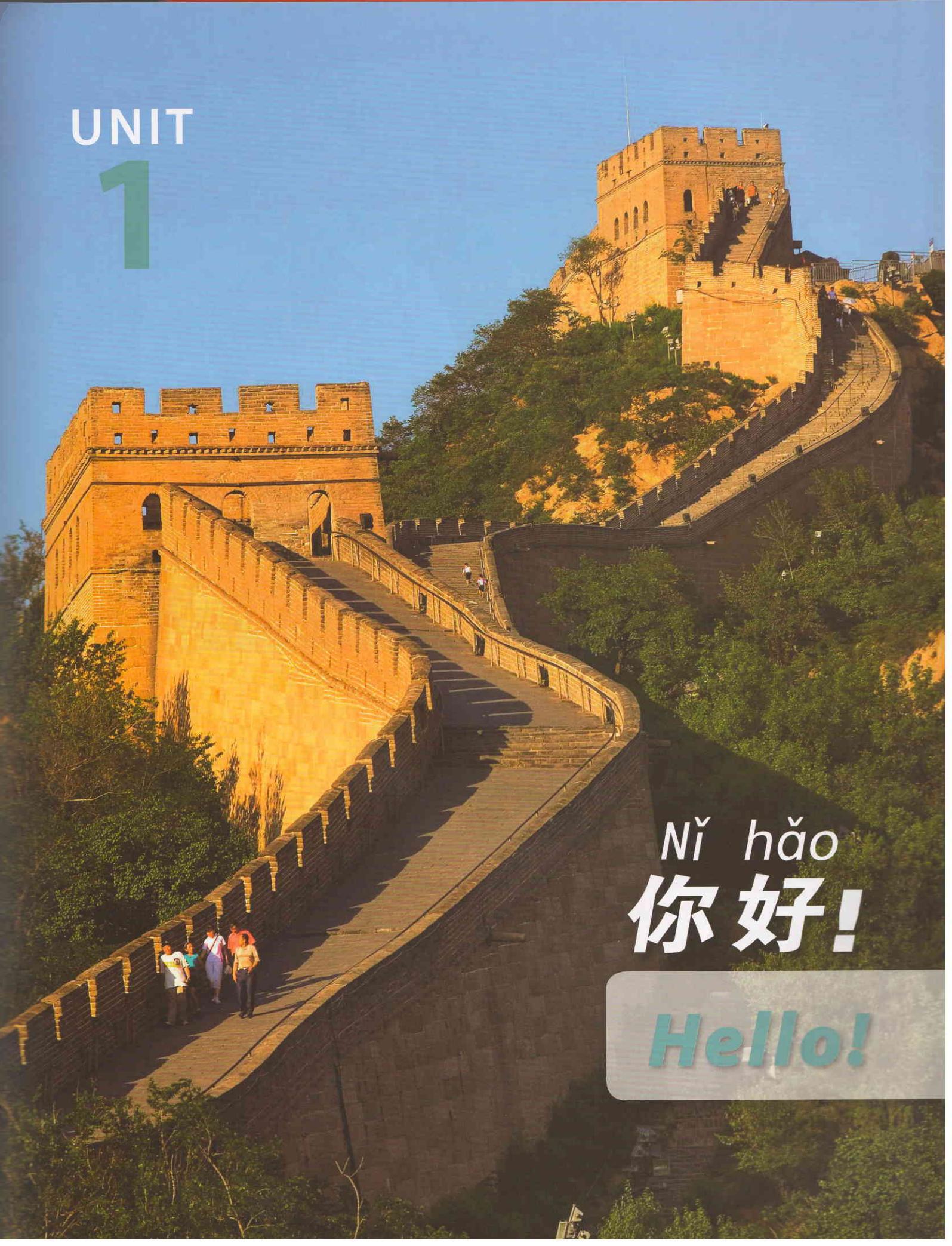
Jīn Yǒngmǐn
Kim Yeong-min (金永民) is also studying Chinese. He comes from Seoul. Like Wang Yu, Yeong-min is a musician, and plays guitar in a local band. He plans to study Chinese medicine after he finishes his courses in Chinese.



Shídìfū
Steve Brown (史蒂夫), another classmate of Mark and Anna's, comes from London. He is a few years older than the others, and has already graduated from university, where he studied economics. He works part-time for an international magazine.

UNIT

1



Nǐ hǎo
你好!

Hello!



LESSON | 1

Vocabulary and listening



1 Match the words with the meanings.

- | | |
|---------|-------------|
| nǐ hǎo | a you |
| 1 你好 | |
| qǐngwèn | b I, me |
| 2 请问 | |
| nǐ | c may I ask |
| 3 你 | |
| wǒ | d hello |
| 4 我 | |
| tā | e she, her |
| 5 他 | |
| tā | f he, him |
| 6 她 | |



2 Listen to the conversation.

Mark is meeting Wang Yu for the first time.

Mǎkè Nǐ hǎo
马克：你好！

Wáng Yù Nǐ hǎo
王玉：你好！

Mǎkè Qǐngwèn nǐ jiào shénme míngzì
马克：请问，你叫什么名字？

Wáng Yù Wǒ jiào Wáng Yù Nǐ ne
王玉：我叫王玉。你呢？

Now listen and say the words.

生词 New words

nǐ hǎo	你好	hello
nǐ	你	you
hǎo	好	good, OK
qǐngwèn	请问	may I ask, excuse me
qǐng	请	please, invite
wèn	问	ask
jào	叫	be called
shénme	什么	what
míngzì	名字	name
wǒ	我	I, me
ne	呢	particle used to ask questions
rènshí	认识	know, get to know
hěn	很	very
gāoxìng	高兴	glad, happy
xiaojié	小姐	Miss
duìbuqǐ	对不起	sorry
xìng	姓	surname, family name

Mǎkè Wǒ jiào Mǎkè
马克：我叫马克，Mark Johnson。

Rènshí nǐ hěn gāoxìng
认识你很高兴，

Yù xiǎojié
玉小姐。

Wáng Yù Duìbuqǐ wǒ xìng Wáng
王玉：对不起，我姓王。



3 Listen again and answer the questions.

- 1 How many names did you hear in the conversation?
- 2 What is the man's name in Chinese?
- 3 What is the woman's surname?

4 Work in pairs and act out the conversation in Activity 2. Use your own names.



5 Listen and number the conversations in the order you hear them.

Liú Lì
刘丽，_____！



a



Wǒ jiào Mǎkè
我叫马克。_____？

b



Qǐngwèn
请问，_____？

c

Now listen again and complete the conversations.

Pronunciation and speaking

The four tones

1 Listen and say the words.

nǐ hǎo	nǐ ne
1 你好	你呢
qǐngwèn	shénme
2 请问	什么
rènshi	gāoxìng
3 认识	高兴

2 Listen and complete the conversation.

Nǐ hǎo

A: 你好!

B: _____!

A: _____?

Wǒ jiào Wáng Yù Nǐ ne?
B: 我叫 王玉。你呢?

Wǒ jiào Mǎkè
A: 我叫 马克。

B: _____。

3 Listen and say the words.

These words are often used for Chinese names.

Chinese names

Male

huá
华 splendid

yīng
英 outstanding

yú
瑜 fine jade

wěi
伟 great

Female

huā
花 flower

yíng
莹 crystal clear

yù
玉 jade

wēi
薇 rose

Now check the best names for the following people.

Sūn Wéi	Sūn Wéi
<input type="checkbox"/> 孙伟	<input type="checkbox"/> 孙薇
Lǐ Zhōnghuá	Lǐ Jīnhuā
<input type="checkbox"/> 李中华	<input type="checkbox"/> 李金花
Wáng Yùyíng	Wáng Guóyīng
<input type="checkbox"/> 王玉莹	<input type="checkbox"/> 王国英

4 Work with the whole class. Introduce yourself to each of your classmates.

Nǐ hǎo Wǒ jiào

A: 你好! 我叫

Qǐngwèn nǐ jiào shénme míngzi
请问, 你叫 什么 名字?

Nǐ hǎo Wǒ jiào

B: 你好! 我叫

CHINESE TO GO



Greeting people

Zǎoshang hǎo
早上 好! Good morning!

Wǎnshàng hǎo
晚上 好! Good evening!

Hǎo jiǔ bù jiàn
好久不见! Long time no see!

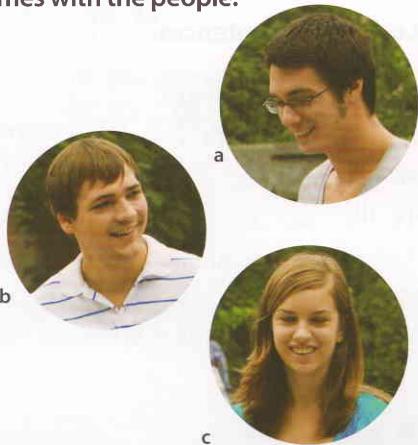


LESSON 2

Reading and writing

- 1 Match the names with the people.

1 Ānnà
安娜



2 Shǐdīfū
史蒂夫

3 Mǎkè
马克

- 3 Complete the table with the correct information.

xìng 姓			
míngzì 名字			

- 2 Read the conversation and answer the questions.

de Zhōngwén míngzì shì shénme

1 Mark 的 中文 名字 是 什么?

de Zhōngwén míngzì shì shénme

2 Anna 的 中文 名字 是 什么?

de Zhōngwén míngzì shì shénme

3 Steve 的 中文 名字 是 什么?

- 4 Work in groups and introduce yourself to the group. Use the conversation to help you.

生词 New words

Zhōngwén

中文 Chinese

nǐmen

你们 you (plural)

shì

是 be

dàjiā

大家 everybody

Wǒ jiào
我叫 Mark Johnson,
Zhōngwén míngzì shì Mǎkè
中文 名字 是 马克。
Rènshi nǐmen hěn gāoxìng
认识 你们 很 高兴。

Dàjiā hǎo Wǒ shì
大家 好！ 我是 Anna Pollard,
Zhōngwén míngzì shì Ānnà
中文 名字 是 安娜。
Hěn gāoxìng rènshi dàjiā
很 高兴 认识 大家。

Nǐmen hǎo Wǒ jiào
你们 好！ 我叫 Steve Brown,
Zhōngwén míngzì shì Shǐdīfū
中文 名字 是 史蒂夫。

Language in use

Word order of Chinese sentences (I)

1 Look at the sentences.

Subject	Predicate	
	Verb	Object
Wǒ 我	shì 是	Wáng Yù 王 玉。
I am Wang Yu.		
Wǒ 我	xìng 姓	Wáng 王。
My family name is Wang.		
Tā 他	jiào 叫	Mǎkè 马克。
His name is Mark.		

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 A simple Chinese sentence is made up of the subject and the predicate.
- 2 The predicate consists of a subject and an object.
- 3 The word order of subject-verb-object is similar to English.

2 Write a simple sentence to introduce yourself. Use the example sentences above to help you.

► Turn to page 162 for grammar reference.



Verbs jiào xìng shì

1 Look at the sentences.

Nǐ jiào shénme míngzì
你 叫 什 么 名 字 ? What is your name?

Wǒ jiào Wáng Yù
我 叫 王 玉。 My name is Wang Yu.

de Zhōngwén míngzì shì Mǎkè
Mark 的 中 文 名 字 是 马 克 。
Mark's Chinese name is Mǎkè .

Nǐ xìng shénme
你 姓 什 么 ? What is your family name?

Wǒ xìng
我 姓 Brown. My family name is Brown.

xìng
Mark 姓 Johnson. Mark's family name is Johnson.

Tā shì Mǎkè
他 是 马 克 。 He is Mark.

Tā shì Shídīfū
他 是 史 蒂 夫 。 He is Steve.

Tā shì Ānnà
她 是 安 娜 。 She is Anna.

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 When the verbs 叫, 姓 and 是 are used after different subjects, their forms change.
- 2 The position of the question marker 什么 in a question is in the same place as its answer in a statement.
- 3 姓 is used to introduce one's surname, 叫 is used to introduce one's first name or full name, and 是 is used to identify someone or something.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct parts of people's names.

Wǒ jiào Wáng Yù wǒ xìng

1 我叫王玉，我姓_____。

Nǐ xìng nǐ jiào Zhāng Wěi

2 你姓_____, 你叫张伟。

Wǒ shì Dīng Yún wǒ xìng

3 我是丁云，我姓_____。

▶ Turn to page 162 for grammar reference.

Questions ending with

ne
呢

1 Look at the conversations.

	Statement		Follow-up question with 呢
	Subject	Predicate	
A: 我	Wǒ	xìng Dīng 姓丁,	nǐ ne 你呢?
B: 我	Wǒ	xìng Wáng 姓王。	
A: 我	Wǒ	shì Shídīfū 是史蒂夫,	nǐ ne 你呢?
B: 我	Wǒ	shì Mäkē 是马克。	

Now answer the questions.

1 你呢 in Conversation 1 means _____.

Nǐ xìng shénme

a 你姓什么?

Nǐ jiào shénme míngzi

b 你叫什么名字?

2 What does A in Conversation 2 want to know by asking 你呢?



2 Work in groups of three. Ask and answer questions with 呢. Use the prompts below to help you.

Wǒ xìng nǐ ne

A: 我姓 Smith, 你呢?

Wǒ xìng

B: 我姓 Craven.

Wǒ jiào

我叫 Angela, (ask Student C) 你呢?

Wǒ jiào Wǒ xìng

C: 我叫 Miles. 我姓 Brown, (ask Student A)

nǐ ne

你呢?

▶ Turn to page 162 for grammar reference.

LESSON | 3

Communication activity

Work with the whole class. Say your Chinese name and ask other students their names. Use the prompt below to help you.

Wǒ de Zhōngwén míngzì shì Mǎkè nǐ ne
我的 中文 名字 是 马克，你 呢？

Now make a list of everyone's names.

► Turn to pages 150 and 156 for more speaking practice.

Cultural Corner

Is your surname Ding or Yuan?

Chinese names are normally formed with two or three characters. The surname always precedes the given name. In the example “Ding Yuan”, the surname is Ding, and the given name is Yuan. Surnames are generally one syllable, and given names usually contain one or two syllables. In Chinese, a person is seldom referred to by his or her surname alone.

The use of given names suggests a much closer relationship between the speaker and the person being addressed than in English. If one's given name contains only one syllable, like “Yuan”, its use is even more limited. Even Ding Yuan's parents would most likely call him “Ding Yuan” at home rather than just “Yuan”.

Character writing

Radicals help to illustrate the meaning of Chinese characters. Look at the following character in ancient Chinese and guess its meaning.



Is your guess correct? Putting a woman (女) and a child (子) together means good (好).

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
亼	man, person	你、他
女	woman	娜、姓

1 Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

伟 姐 什 她

2 Match the characters with the meanings.

- | | |
|-----|-----------|
| 1 你 | a good |
| 2 他 | b surname |
| 3 好 | c you |
| 4 姓 | d he, him |

3 Trace the characters in the boxes.

你 亼 亼 亼 亼 亼 亼 亼

他 亼 亼 亼 亼 亼 他

好 女 女 女 女 好 好

姓 女 女 女 女 姓 姓

Review and practice

1 Match the words with the meanings.

- | | |
|---------|---------------|
| dàjiā | a name |
| 1 大家 | |
| shénme | b know |
| 2 什么 | |
| míngzi | c what |
| 3 名字 | |
| rènshi | d happy, glad |
| 4 认识 | |
| gāoxìng | e everybody |
| 5 高兴 | |
| qǐngwèn | f hello |
| 6 请问 | |
| nǐ hǎo | g may I ask |
| 7 你好 | |

2 Complete the word puzzle.



3 Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

gāoxìng qǐngwèn jiào
高兴 请问 叫

Shǐdīfū: _____, 你叫什么名字?

Wáng Yù: 我 _____ 王玉。你呢?

Shǐdīfū: 我叫史蒂夫。
Wáng Yù: 认识你很 _____。

4 Put the words in the correct order to make questions.

- shénme jiào nǐ míngzi
1 什么 / 叫 / 你 / 名字 / ?
shénme Wáng Yù xìng
2 什么 / 王玉 / 姓 / ?
shénme shì Zhōngwén míngzi de
3 什么 / 是 / 中文 / 名字 / 的 / ?

Now answer the questions.

5 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

xìng shénme rènshi ne
姓 什么 认识 呢

- Nǐ jiào _____ míngzi
1 你叫 _____ 名字?
nǐ hěn gāoxìng
2 _____ 你很 高兴。
Wǒ shì Wáng Yù nǐ
3 我是 王玉，你 _____?
Wǒ jiào King, jiào
4 我 _____ King, 叫 Sandra King.

6 Choose the correct answers to the questions.

Nǐ xìng shénme
1 你姓 什么?

Wǒ jiào Mǎkè Wǒ xìng Wáng
a 我叫 马克。 b 我姓 王。

Nǐ jiào shénme míngzi
2 你叫 什么 名字?

Wǒ jiào Shǐdīfū Wǒ xìng Zhāng
a 我叫 史蒂夫。 b 我姓 张。

Vocabulary extension

Read the passage.

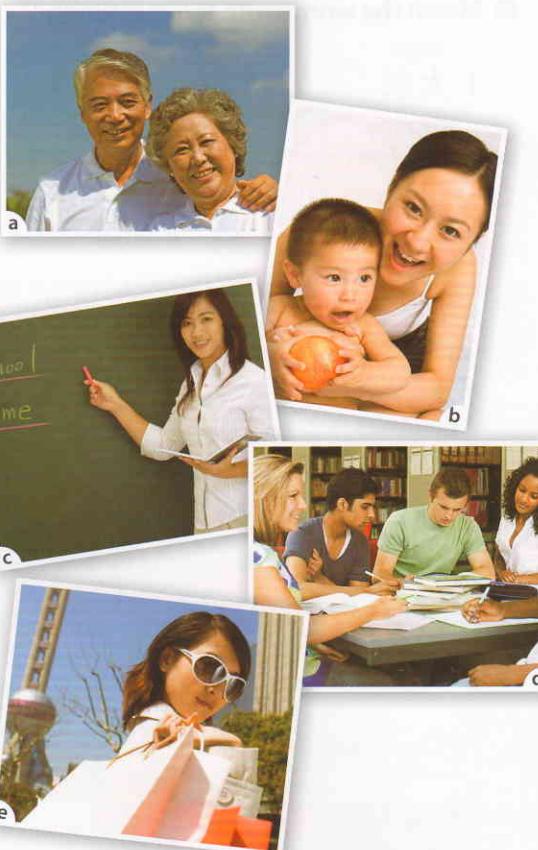
Addressing people

We use the following titles when addressing people in Chinese:

xiānsheng	先生	xiǎojiě	小姐	Miss
nǚshì	女士	tàitai	太太	Mrs.

On campus, the most popular way to address a stranger is to call him/her 同学 (schoolmate) or 老师 (teacher). Sometimes these titles can be used with names, for example, 李先生 and 王小姐.

Now look at these people and decide how you would address them.



Vocabulary list

你好	nǐ hǎo	hello
你	nǐ	pron. you
好	hǎo	adj. good, OK
请问	qǐngwèn	may I ask, excuse me
请	qǐng	interj./v. please, invite
问	wèn	v. ask
叫	jiào	v. be called
什么	shénme	pron. what
名字	míngzì	n. name
我	wǒ	pron. I, me
呢	ne	particle (used to ask questions)
认识	rènshí	v. know, get to know
很	hěn	adv. very
高兴	gāoxìng	adj. glad, happy

小姐	xiǎojiě	n.	Miss
对不起	duìbuqǐ		sorry
姓	xìng	v./n.	surname, family name
中文	Zhōngwén	n.	Chinese
是	shì	v.	be
你们	nǐmen	pron.	you (plural)
大家	dàjiā	pron.	everybody
他	tā	pron.	he, him
她	tā	pron.	she, her
先生	xiānsheng	n.	Mr
女士	nǚshì	n.	Ms
太太	tàitai	n.	Mrs
同学	tóngxué	n.	schoolmate
老师	lǎoshī	n.	teacher

* The words in colour are not target words for the unit.

UNIT
2



Nǐ shì nǎlǐ rén
你是哪里人?

Where are you from?



LESSON | 1

Vocabulary and listening



1 Match the flags with the nations and the people.



1 Hánuguó Hánuguórén
a 韩国 / 韩国人



2 Měiguó Měiguórén
b 美国 / 美国人



3 Jiānádà Jiānádàrén
c 加拿大 / 加拿大人



4 Yīngguó Yīngguórén
d 英国 / 英国人



5 Àodàlìyà Àodàlìyàrén
e 澳大利亚 / 澳大利亚人



6 Fǎguó Fǎguórén
f 法国 / 法国人



7 Zhōngguó Zhōngguórén
g 中国 / 中国人



8 Rìběn Rìběnrén
h 日本 / 日本人

Now listen and say the names of the nations and the people.



2 Listen to the conversation.

Steve and Wang Yu are talking about their nationalities.

Shǐdīfū Zǎoshang hǎo
史蒂夫：早上 好！

Wáng Yù Zǎoshang hǎo
王玉：早上 好！

Shǐdīfū Nǐ shì Rìběnrén ma
史蒂夫：你是日本人吗？

Wáng Yù Bù shì wǒ bù shì
王玉：不是，我不是
Rìběnrén
日本人。

Shǐdīfū Nǐ shì nǎlǐ rén
史蒂夫：你是哪里人？



生词 New words

- Wáng Yù Wǒ shì Zhōngguórén
王玉：我是中国人。
- Nǐ shì nǎ guó rén
你是哪国人？
- Shǐdīfū Wǒ shì Yīngguórén
史蒂夫：我是英国人。
- Wáng Yù Nǐ zhù zài Lúndūn ma
王玉：你住在伦敦吗？
- Shǐdīfū Bù wǒ zhù zài Běijīng
史蒂夫：不，我住在北京。

zǎoshang	hǎo	good	Zhōngguó	中国
Rìběn		morning	guó	China
日本		Japan	国	country
rén		people	Yīngguó	英国
人			UK	
ma		particle used to ask questions	zhù	live
吗			在	at, in
bù		not, no	zài	
不			Lúndūn	伦敦
nǎlǐ		where	Běijīng	London
哪里			北京	Beijing
nǎ		which		

1-19

3 Listen again and answer the questions.

Wáng Yù shì Rìběnrén ma

1 王玉是日本人吗？

Shǐdīfū shì nǎlǐ rén

2 史蒂夫是哪里人？

Shǐdīfū zhù zài nǎlǐ

3 史蒂夫住在哪里？

4 Complete the sentences.

Wáng Yù shì rén tā bùshì
1 王玉是_____人，她不是_____。

Shǐdīfū shì rén tā zhù zài
2 史蒂夫是_____人，他住在_____。

5 Work in pairs and act out the conversation in Activity 2. Use your own countries or cities.

1-20

6 Listen and check where the speakers are from.

- | | | | |
|------------------------------|----------|----------------------------|----------|
| 1 <input type="checkbox"/> a | Yīngguó | <input type="checkbox"/> b | Hánguó |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> a | Zhōngguó | <input type="checkbox"/> b | Rìběn |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> a | Fǎguó | <input type="checkbox"/> b | Àodàliyà |
| 4 <input type="checkbox"/> a | Jiānádà | <input type="checkbox"/> b | Měiguó |
| | 加拿大 | | 美国 |





Pronunciation and speaking

The four tones

1-21

1 Listen and say the words.

zhù zài	zǎoshang
1 住在	早上
Zhōngguó	Běijīng
2 中国	北京
nǎ guó	nǎli
3 哪国	哪里

1-22

2 Listen and check the words you hear.

1	<input type="checkbox"/> a 人	<input type="checkbox"/> b 认
2	<input type="checkbox"/> a 十	<input type="checkbox"/> b 是
3	<input type="checkbox"/> a 好	<input type="checkbox"/> b 号
4	<input type="checkbox"/> a 我	<input type="checkbox"/> b 握

3 Complete the sentences using the words in the box and your own information.

Lúndūn
伦敦Méiguó
美国

1 Shǐdīfū zhù zài Běijīng tā bù zhù
史蒂夫住在北京，他不住

zài
在_____。

2 Ānnà bù shì Yīngguórén tā shì rén
安娜不是英国人，她是_____人。

3 Wǒ shì rén wǒ zhù zài
我是_____人，我住在_____。

Now work in pairs. Read your sentences and compare answers.

4 Work in pairs. Introduce each other using the prompts below.

Nǐ hǎo Wǒ jiào nǐ jiào shénme
A: 你好！我叫....., 你叫什么
míngzì
名字？

Wǒ jiào rènshí nǐ hěn gāoxìng
B: 我叫....., 认识你很 高兴！
Nǐ shì nǎ guó rén
你是哪国人？

Wǒ shì zhù zài Nǐ ne
A: 我是....., 住在.....。你呢？
Wǒ shì zhù zài
B: 我是....., 住在.....。

1-23

CHINESE TO GO

Talking about where people come from

Tā shì Běijīngrén ma
她是北京人吗? Is she a Beijinger?

Wǒ bù zhīdào
我不知道。 I don't know.

Tā shì Zhōngguórén
他是中国人。 He is Chinese.

Wǒ yě shì
我也是。 Me too.

LESSON | 2

Reading and writing

1 Match the pictures with the names of the places.



a



b



c



d

Nánfēi Xīní Mò'ěrběn Hǎoláiwū
1 南非 2 悉尼 3 墨尔本 4 好莱坞

2 Read the magazine and answer the questions.

shì nǎ guó rén
1 Hayden Christensen 是哪国人?

shì Měiguórén ma
2 Charlize Theron 是美国人吗?

shì nǎ guó rén
3 Russell Crowe 是哪国人?

shì nǎlǐ rén ne
4 Nicole Kidman 是哪里人? Cate Blanchett 呢?

3 Work in pairs. Introduce someone you know who lives overseas.

Tā Tā xìng jiào
他/她姓 _____, 叫 _____。

Tā Tā shì rén zhù zài
他/她是 _____ 人, 住在 _____。

生词 New words

tāmen	they, them	Nánfēi	South Africa
Hǎoláiwū	Hollywood	Xīnxīlán	New Zealand
míngxīng	celebrity	Àodàliyà	Australia
dànshì	but	Xīní	Sydney
Měiguó	US	Mò'ěrběn	Melbourne
Jiānádà	Canada		

Nǐ rènshi tāmen ma
你认识他们吗?

Tāmen shì Hǎoláiwū míngxīng
他们是好莱坞明星。

Dànshì tāmen bù shì Měiguórén
但是他们不是美国人。

Hayden Christensen

shì Jiānádárén
是加拿大人;

Charlize Theron

shì Nánfēirén
是南非人;

Russell Crowe

shì Xīnxīlánrén

是新西兰人;

Nicole Kidman

shì Àodàliyà

是澳大利亚悉尼人;

Cate Blanchett

shì Àodàliyà

是澳大利亚

Mò'ěrběnrén

墨尔本人。



Language in use

Yes/no questions ending with **ma** 吗

1 Look at the sentences.

Subject	Predicate		Question particle 吗
	Verb	Object	
Wǒ 我	shì 是	Wáng Yù 王玉。	
Nǐ 你	shì 是	Wáng Yù 王玉	ma 吗?
Tā 他	xìng 姓	Wáng 王。	
Tā 他	xìng 姓	Wáng 王	ma 吗?
Ānnà 安娜	shì 是	Měiguórén 美国人。	
Ānnà 安娜	shì 是	Měiguórén 美国人	ma 吗?

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 吗 is used at the end of a question.
- 2 吗 is used to form a yes/no question.
- 3 The word order in a question ending with 吗 is not the same as that in a statement.

2 Check the sentences that can have 吗 added at the end to make questions.

Shǐdīfū zhù zài Běijīng
 1 史蒂夫 住 在 北京。

Nǐ shì nǎ guó rén
 2 你 是 哪 国 人?

Nǐ xìng shénme
 3 你 姓 什 么 ?

Tā jiào Wáng Yù
 4 她 叫 王 玉。

ma
吗

Questions with
interrogative pronoun

nǎlǐ
哪里 / nǎ
哪

1 Look at the sentences.

Subject	Predicate	
	Verb	Complement / Object (noun / 哪里 / 哪国)
Wáng Yù 王玉	zhù 住	zài Běijīng 在北京。
Wáng Yù 王玉	zhù 住	zài nǎlǐ 在哪里?
Tā 她	shì 是	Yīngguórén 英国人。
Tā 她	shì 是	nǎ guó rén 哪国人?

Now check the three correct explanations.

- 1 The word order of questions is the same as that of statements.
- 2 The word order of questions is different from the order of statements.
- 3 哪里 is used to ask questions about place.
- 4 哪国 means "which country".

2 Ask questions about the underlined parts of the sentences using 哪里 or 哪国.

Ānnà shì Měiguórén
 1 安娜 是 美国人。

Shǐdīfū zhù zài Běijīng
 2 史蒂夫 住 在 北京。

Yǒngmín shì Hángrén
 3 永民 是 韩国人。

Tā zhù zài Xīní
 4 他 住 在 悉尼。

► Turn to page 162 for grammar reference.

► Turn to page 163 for grammar reference.

Negative adverb

bù
不

1 Look at the sentences.

Tā xìng Wáng
她姓王。

Tā bù xìng Wáng
她不姓王。

Tā shì Yīngguórén
他是英国人。

Tā bù shì Yīngguórén
他不是英国人。

Wǒ zhù zài Lúndūn
我住在伦敦。

Wǒ bù zhù zài Lúndūn
我不住在伦敦。

- 1 Underline the sentences which are affirmative.
- 2 Circle the character which shows that the sentence is negative.
- 3 Circle the verbs which are modified by 不.

2 Look at the sentences.

Nǐ bù shì Měiguórén ma
你不是美国人吗? Wǒ shì Wǒ bù shì
我是/我不是。
Aren't you American? Yes, I am. / No, I'm not.

Now check the correct explanation.

- 1 不 always comes before the subject.
 2 不 usually comes before the predicate.

3 Rewrite the sentences as negative sentences with 不.

Nǐ shì Mǎkè
1 你是马克。

Wǒ shì Běijīngrén
2 我是北京人。

Tā jiào Wáng Yù
3 她叫王玉。

Wǒ rènshi Shídīfū
4 我认识史蒂夫。

► Turn to page 163 for grammar reference.



LESSON | 3

Communication activity

1 Work with the rest of the class.

You are at a friend's party. Introduce yourself to the other people at the party, and ask them for their names and nationalities. Find out who is also from your country or area.

2 Work in groups.

Work with people who are from the same place as you. Discuss and list three interesting things about where you are from. Then tell the class about where you are from.

► Turn to pages 150 and 156 for more speaking practice.

Cultural Corner

Is he speaking Chinese?

In China, you might hear some Chinese people speak a language that is different from what you learnt in class. Most probably they are speaking another dialect of Chinese. There are many Chinese dialects, roughly classified into seven large groups: Mandarin (Putonghua), Gan, Hakka, Min, Wu, Xiang and Cantonese. Standard Mandarin was chosen to be the common language of China in the 1950s, to function as a lingua franca for the whole country. All Chinese dialects have some vocabulary in common, but people speaking different dialects cannot communicate or understand each other very well.

A distinguishing feature of the Chinese language is its tones. Mandarin has four tones and some dialects have even more. Despite the large differences among Chinese dialects, there is one thing they have in common—written Chinese characters.

Character writing

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
口	mouth	吗、呢
日	sun	早、是

1 Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

名 哪 晶 明

2 Match the words with the meanings.

jiào	a particle used to ask questions
míngxīng	b be called
2 明星	c celebrity
zǎoshàng	d morning
3 早上	
ma	
4 吗	

3 Trace the characters in the boxes.

叫



吗



早



明



Review and practice

1 Make five words with the characters.

zǎo dàn nǎ shàng shí
早 但 哪 上 识
shì xīng guó rèn míng
是 星 国 认 明

2 Complete the sentences with the correct words in brackets.

- 1 你是_____人? (哪里 / 哪)
Tā shì Yīngguórén tā Lúndūn
2 他是 英国人，他_____伦敦。
zhù zài zhù
(住在 / 住)
Tāmen shì míngxīng Zhōngguó
3 他们是_____. (明星 / 中国)

3 Match the questions with the answers.

- Wáng Yù shì nǎlǐ rén
1 王玉是哪里人?
Tā shì Zhōngguórén ma
2 他是中国人吗?
Nǐ zhù zài Běijīng ma
3 你住在北京吗?
Tā zhù zài nǎlǐ
4 她住在哪里?

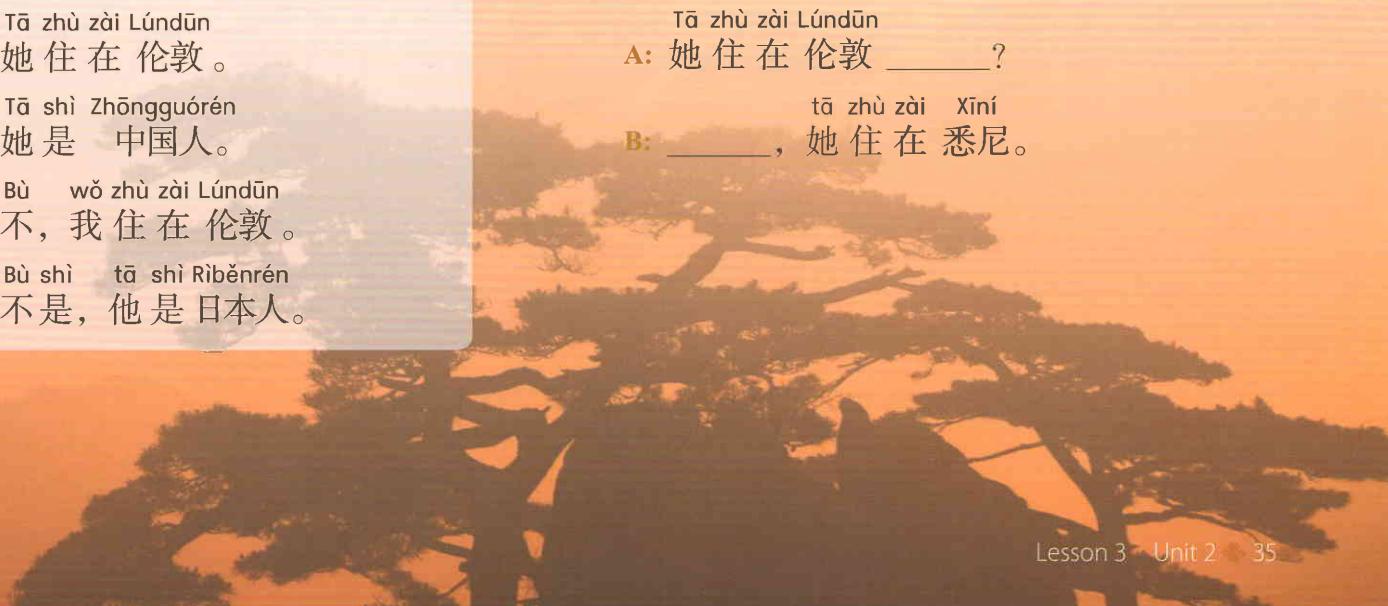
- Tā zhù zài Lúndūn
a 她住在伦敦。
Tā shì Zhōngguórén
b 她是中国人。
Bù wǒ zhù zài Lúndūn
c 不，我住在伦敦。
Bù shì tā shì Rìběnrén
d 不是，他是日本人。

4 Choose the correct answers to the questions.

- Mǎkè shì Rìběnrén ma
1 马克是日本人吗?
Mǎkè zhù zài Rìběn
a 马克住在日本。 Mǎkè bù shì Rìběnrén
b 马克不是日本人。
Ānnà zhù zài nǎlǐ
2 安娜住在哪里?
Ānnà zhù zài Běijīng
a 安娜住在北京。 Ānnà shì Měiguórén
b 安娜是美国人。
Tā shì Shídīfū ma
3 他是史蒂夫吗?
Tā shì Yīngguórén
a 他是英国人。 Bù tā bù shì Shídīfū
b 不，他不是史蒂夫。
Nǐ shì nǎ guó rén
4 你是哪国人?
Nǐ shì Mò'ěrběnrén
a 你是墨尔本人。 Wǒ shì Yīngguórén
b 我是英国人。

5 Complete the conversation with 哪, 吗 or 不.

- Tā shì Ānnà
A: 她是安娜_____?
Tā bù shì Ānnà tā shì
B: 她不是安娜，她是Jane。
Tā shì guó rén
A: 她是_____国人?
Tā shì Yīngguórén
B: 她是英国人。
Tā zhù zài Lúndūn
A: 她住在伦敦_____?
B: _____, 她住在悉尼。

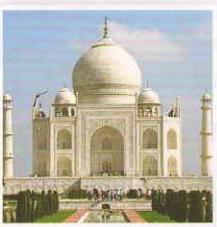


Vocabulary extension

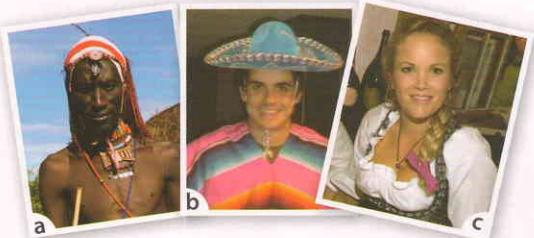
1 Look at the names of nations.

Mòxīgē 墨西哥	México	Xīnjiāpō 新加坡	Singapore
Kěnníyà 肯尼亚	Kenya	Déguó 德国	Germany
Tàiguó 泰国	Thailand	Yìndù 印度	India
Āijí 埃及	Egypt		

2 Write the names of the countries under the pictures.



Now match the people with the nations.



1 Mòxīgē
墨西哥

2 Kěnníyà
肯尼亚

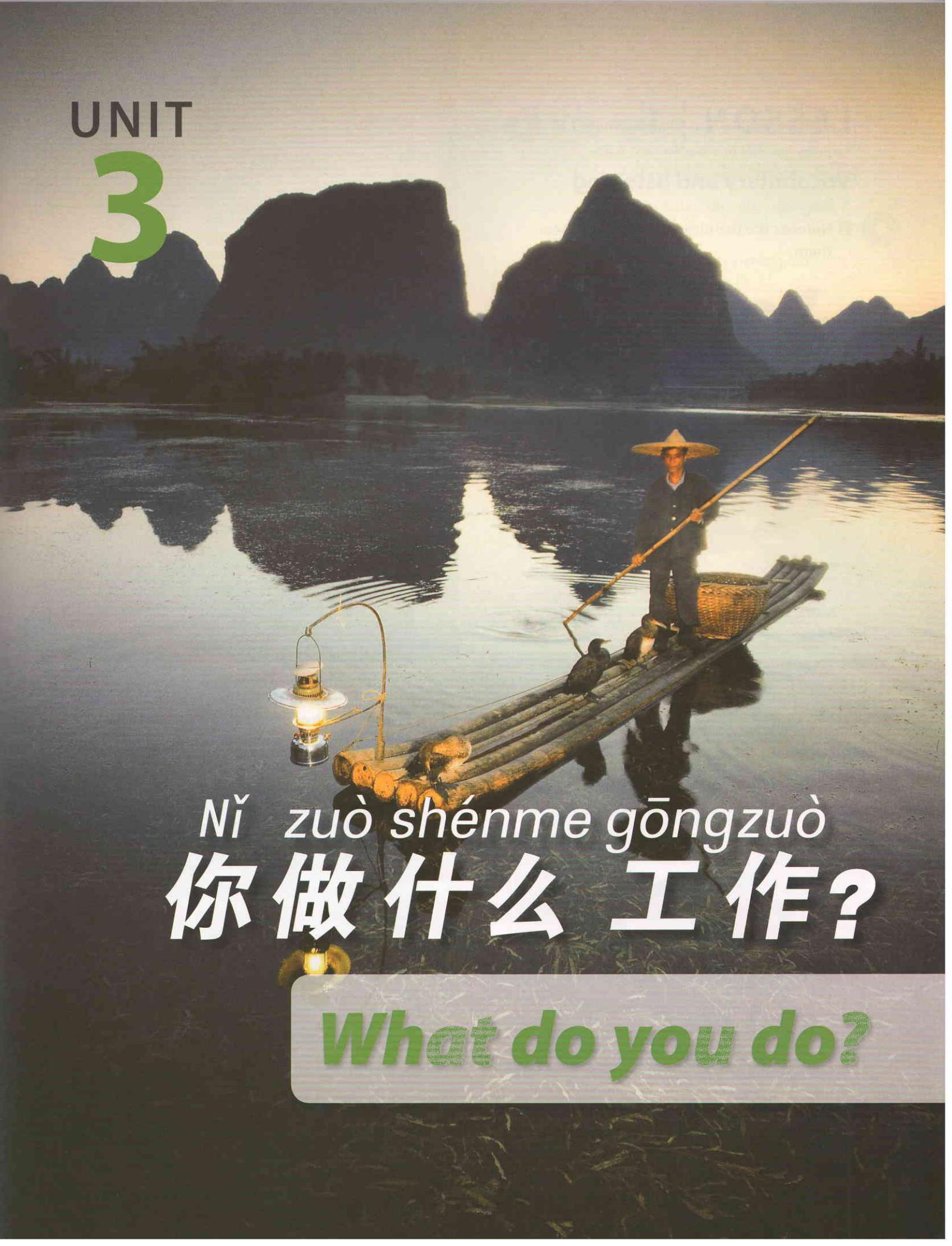
3 Déguó
德国

Now say the countries aloud.

Vocabulary list

早上好	zǎoshang hǎo	good morning	但是	dànshì	conj.	but
日本	Rìběn	n.	美国	Měiguó	n.	US
人	rén	n.	加拿大	Jiānádà	n.	Canada
吗	ma	particle (used to ask questions)	南非	Nánfēi	n.	South Africa
不	bù	adv.	新西兰	Xīnxílán	n.	New Zealand
哪里	nǎlǐ	pron.	澳大利亚	Àodàlìyà	n.	Australia
哪	nǎ	pron.	悉尼	Xīní	n.	Sydney
中国	Zhōngguó	n.	墨尔本	Mò'erběn	n.	Melbourne
国	guó	n.	韩国	Hánguó	n.	Korea
英国	Yīngguó	n.	法国	Fǎguó	n.	France
住	zhù	v.	墨西哥	Mòxīgē	n.	Mexico
在	zài	prep.	肯尼亚	Kěnníyà	n.	Kenya
伦敦	Lúndūn	n.	泰国	Tàiguó	n.	Thailand
北京	Běijīng	n.	埃及	Āijí	n.	Egypt
他们	tāmen	pron.	新加坡	Xīnjiāpō	n.	Singapore
好莱坞	Hǎoláiwū	n.	德国	Déguó	n.	Germany
明星	míngxīng	n.	印度	Yìndù	n.	India

UNIT
3



Nǐ zuò shénme gōngzuò
你做什 么 工 作?

What do you do?

LESSON | 1

Vocabulary and listening



- 1 Number the people in the order you hear them.



a jízhě
 记者



b yīshēng
 医生



c xuéshēng
 学生



d hùshī
 护士

Now listen again and say the words.

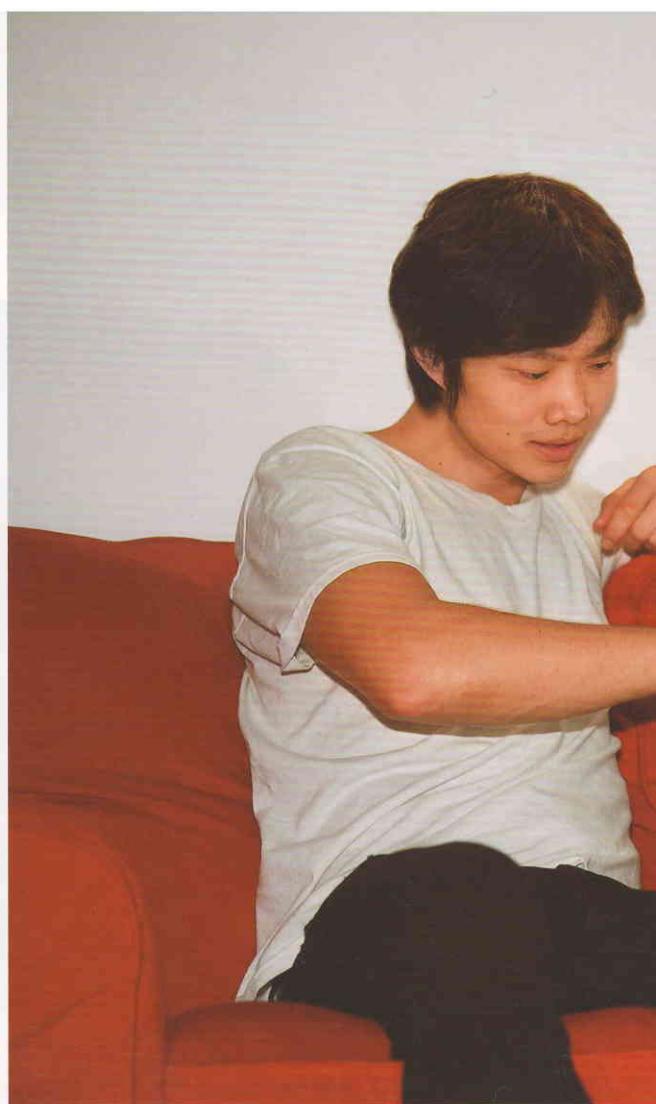


- 2 Label the people in the picture with the words in the box.

bàba māma jiějie dìdi
爸爸 妈妈 姐姐 弟弟



Now listen and say the words.



- 3 Listen to the conversation.

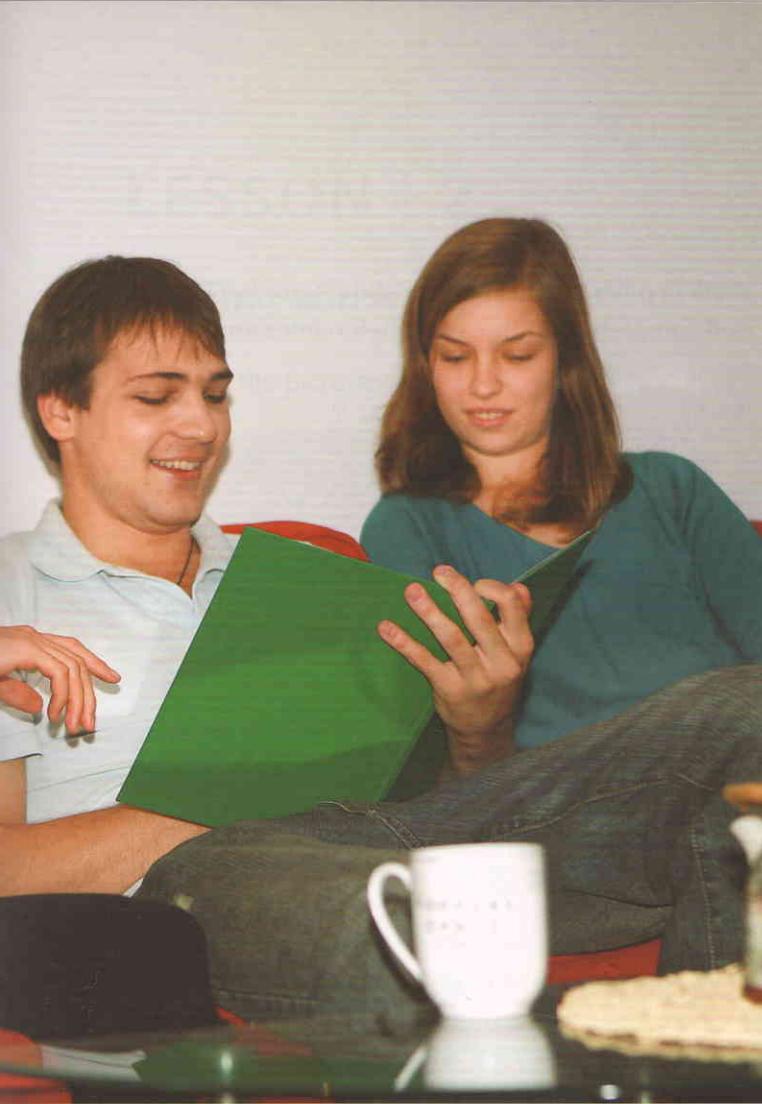
Mark is telling Yeong-min and Anna about his family.

Yōngmín: Tā shì nǐ mèimei ma
永民: 她是你妹妹吗?

Mäkè: Shì tā shì wǒ mèimei Zhè
马克: 是, 她是我妹妹。这
shì wǒ dìdi
是我弟弟。

Yōngmín: Nǐ mèimei hé dìdi yě shì
永民: 你妹妹和弟弟也是
xuéshēng ma
学生吗?

Mäkè: Wǒ dìdi shì xuéshēng dàn
马克: 我弟弟是学生, 但
shì wǒ mèimei shì jízhě
是我妹妹是记者。



- Ānnà Nǐ bàba zuò shénme gōngzuò
安娜：你爸爸做什么工作？
- Mǎkè Tā shì yīshēng
马克：他是医生。
- Ānnà Nǐ māma zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò
安娜：你妈妈在哪里工作？
- Mǎkè Tā zài yīyuàn gōngzuò Wǒ
马克：她在医院工作。我
- bàba māma dōu shì yīshēng
爸爸 妈妈 都是医生。



4 Listen again and answer the questions.

Mǎkè de mèimei zuò shénme gōngzuò

1 马克的妹妹做什么工作？

Mǎkè de bāba zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò

2 马克的爸爸在哪里工作？

Mǎkè de māma shì yīshēng ma

3 马克的妈妈是医生吗？

5 Work in pairs and act out the conversation in Activity 3. Use the jobs in Activity 1 to help you.

生词 New words

tā	she, her	bàba	father
mèimei	younger sister	zuò	do
zhè	this	gōngzuò	work, job
dìdi	younger brother	tā	he, him
hé	and	yīshēng	doctor
yě	also	māma	mother
xuésheng	student	yīyuàn	hospital
jìzhě	journalist	dōu	both, all

Pronunciation and speaking

The finals: a, e, i



- 1** Listen and check the correct pinyin for the words.

- | | | |
|-----|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1 妈 | <input type="checkbox"/> a mā | <input type="checkbox"/> b me |
| 2 哪 | <input type="checkbox"/> a nǐ | <input type="checkbox"/> b nǎ |
| 3 者 | <input type="checkbox"/> a zhě | <input type="checkbox"/> b zhǐ |
| 4 医 | <input type="checkbox"/> a yī | <input type="checkbox"/> b yā |



- 2** Say the sentences aloud.

Zhè shì wǒ yéye

1 这是我爷爷！

Tā māma shì lǎoshī

2 他妈妈是老师。

Lǐ Lì de baba yě shì jìzhě

3 李丽的爸爸也是记者。

Nǐ dìdi shì yīshēng ma

4 你弟弟是医生吗？

Now listen and repeat.



- 3** Listen and say the words.

- | | | |
|------|-------|---------|
| 1 和 | yě | zhè |
| 2 爸爸 | dìdi | mèimeい |
| 3 医生 | jìzhě | gōngzuò |



- 4** Work in pairs. Ask each other about your families, and complete the table with their names and jobs.

Nǐ baba jiào shénme míngzì

A: 你爸爸叫什么名字？

Wǒ baba jiào

B: 我爸爸叫 James Taylor。

Tā zuò shénme gōngzuò

A: 他做什么工作？

Tā shì yīshēng

B: 他是医生。

	Family member	Name	Occupation
1			
2			
3			
4			

- 5** Tell the class about your partner's family.

Tā Tā baba jiào tā shì
他/她爸爸叫……，他是……。

Tā Tā māma jiào tā shì
他/她妈妈叫……，她是……。

CHINESE TO GO

Talking about your family

Wǒ jiějie shì jǐngchá
我姐姐是警察。

My elder sister is a policewoman.

Zhēn bàng
真棒！That's great!

LESSON 2

Reading and writing

1 Match the pictures with the words.



1 yīyuàn 2 zhàopiàn 3 lǎoshī 4 xuéxiào
1 医院 2 照片 3 老师 4 学校

2 Read Wang Yu's letter about her family.



Shídìfū
史蒂夫：

Nǐ hǎo
你好！

Zhè shì wǒ jiā de zhàopiàn Tā shì wǒ
这是我家的照片。他是我

bàba tā shì wǒ māma Tāmen dōu zài
爸爸，她是我妈妈。他们都在

yīyuàn gōngzuò tāmen dōu shì yīshēng Zhè shì
医院工作，他们都是医生。这是

wǒ gēge tā zài xuéxiào gōngzuò tā shì
我哥哥，他在学校工作，他是

lǎoshī Zhè shì wǒ jiějie tā shì jízhě
老师。这是我姐姐，她是记者。

Zhè shì wǒ wǒ shì xuéshēng
这是我，我是学生。……

3 Check the true statements.

Wǒ bàba shì yīshēng wǒ māma yě shì
我爸爸是医生，我妈妈也是

1 yīshēng
医生。

Wǒ gēge shì xuéshēng

2 我哥哥是学生。

Wǒ jiějie shì hùshī

3 我姐姐是护士。

Wǒ shì xuéshēng

4 我是学生。

4 Write about your family. Use Wang Yu's letter to help you.

bàba māma jiějie mèimei gēge dìdì
爸爸 妈妈 姐姐/妹妹 哥哥/弟弟

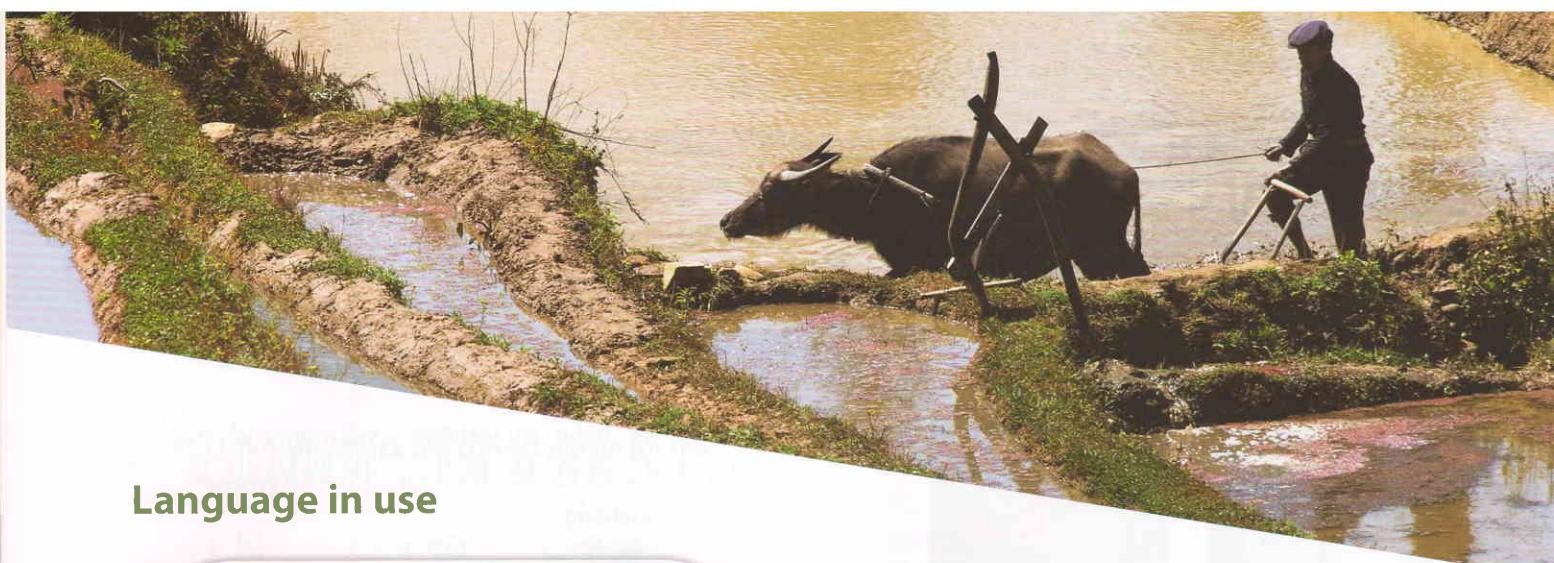


Wǒ jiào _____ wǒ shì _____
我叫_____，我是_____。

Wǒ bàba shì _____ tā zài _____ gōngzuò
我爸爸是_____，他在_____工作。

生词 New words

jīā	family, home	xuéxiào	school
de	structural particle	lǎoshī	teacher
zhàopiàn	photo	jiějie	elder sister
gēge	elder brother		



Language in use

Adverbs

yě dōu
也 / 都

1 Look at the sentences.

Wǒ shì xuésheng
我是 学生 。 I'm a student.

Mǎkè yě shì xuésheng
马克也是 学生 。 Mark is also a student.

Wǒ hé Mǎkè dōu shì xuésheng
我和马克都是 学生 。
Both Mark and I are students.

Now choose the correct word to complete the explanations.

- 1 The adverbs **也** and **都** are used (before/after) the predicate in a sentence.
- 2 The subject of the sentences with the adverb **都** should be (singular/plural).

2 Look at the sentences.

Wǒ bàba bù shì yīshēng
我爸爸不是 医生 。
My father is not a doctor.

Wǒ māma yě bù shì yīshēng
我妈妈也不是 医生 。
My mother is not a doctor, either.

Wǒ bàba hé māma dōu bù shì yīshēng
我爸爸和妈妈都不是 医生 。
Neither my father nor mother is a doctor.

Now check the correct explanation.

- 1 不 should come before **也** or **都** in a sentence.
- 2 不 should come after **也** or **都** in a sentence.

3 Rewrite the second sentence with **也**.

Wáng Yù xìng Wáng
1 a 王 玉 姓 王 。

Wáng Yún xìng Wáng
b 王 云 姓 王 。

Shǐdīfū bù zhù zài Lúndūn
2 a 史蒂夫不住在 伦敦。

Mǎkè bù zhù zài Lúndūn
b 马克不住在 伦敦。

Shǐdīfū shì xuésheng
3 a 史蒂夫是 学生 。

Wáng Yù shì xuésheng
b 王 玉 是 学生 。

Wǒ bù rènshi Ānnà de māma
4 a 我不认识 安娜的 妈妈。

Mǎkè bù rènshi Ānnà de māma
b 马克不认识 安娜的 妈妈。

Now join the two sentences with **都**.

► Turn to page 163 for grammar reference.

Word order of Chinese sentences (II)

1 Look at the sentences.

Subject	Predicate		
	Adverbial	Verb	Object
Wǒmen 我们	dōu 都	shì 是	xuésheng 学生。
We are all students.			
Wǒ 我	bù 不	shì 是	lǎoshī 老师。
I am not a teacher.			
Tā 他	zài yīyuàn 在 医院	gōngzuò 工作。	
He works at the hospital.			
Tā 她	yě zài yīyuàn 也 在 医院	gōngzuò 工作。	
She also works at the hospital.			

Now check the correct explanation.

- 1 The adverbial often comes before the verb it modifies.
- 2 The adverbial usually comes after the verb it modifies.

2 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

bù 不 shì 是 yě 也 dōu 都

1 他 _____ 医生。

2 我 _____ 是 医生，我是 老师。

3 我们是 老师，我们 _____ 在 大学
gōngzuò 工作。

4 我在 医院 工作，她 _____ 在 医院
gōngzuò 工作。

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

Zhōngguórén shì bù Shídìfū
1 中国人 / 是 / 不 / 史蒂夫 /。

Wáng Yù xìng bù Yù
2 王 玉 / 姓 / 不 / 玉 /。

xuésheng bù shì Mǎkè yě
3 学生 / 不 / 是 / 马克 / 也 /。

Měiguó dōu gōngzuò zài Tāmen
4 美国 / 都 / 工作 / 在 / 他们 /。

Turn to page 163 for grammar reference.

Pronouns as modifiers

de
(+的)

1 Look at the sentences.

Wǒ māma shì lǎoshī
我 妈妈 是 老师。

Wǒ jiějie shì jìzhě
我 姐姐 是 记者。

Wǒ de míngzi shì Wáng Yù
我的 名字 是 王 玉。

Wǒ de gōngzuò shì yīshēng
我的 工作 是 医生。

Now check the correct explanation.

- 1 的 can be omitted when used before family members.
- 2 的 can be omitted when used before objects.

2 Write the sentences in Chinese using 的 when necessary.

- 1 He is my father.
- 2 This is his photo.
- 3 My name is Mark.
- 4 This is my elder sister's photo.

Turn to page 163 for grammar reference.

LESSON | 3

Communication activity

1 Work in pairs.

Student A:

You have just started a Chinese language course at Beijing Foreign Studies University. Look at the student registration form below and prepare for an interview with the Admissions Office secretary.

Student B:

You are the secretary of the Admissions Office at Beijing Foreign Studies University. You are interviewing students enrolled in a Chinese language course. Prepare interview questions based on the categories in the form.

2 Work in pairs. Act out the interview using the information you prepared in Activity 1.

Nǐ hǎo Nǐ jiào shénme míngzì
你好！你叫什么名字？

Nǐ shì nǎ guó rén
你是哪国人？

Nǐ de jǐnji liánxírén shì shéi
你的紧急联系人是谁？

Tāmen jiào shénme míngzì Zuò shénme gōngzuò
他们叫什么名字？做什么工作？

► Turn to pages 151 and 157 for more speaking practice.

Cultural Corner

Times change, job preferences change!

Job trends in China have changed enormously since the birth of the “reform and opening-up” (改革开放) policy in the late 1970s, encouraging private enterprises. Before that, being a worker or soldier was seen as very noble and desirable. Nearly all jobs guaranteed life-long careers, and jobs which provided security despite poor job performance were called the “unbreakable iron rice bowl” (铁饭碗). However, with economic reforms, civil service jobs and other government iron rice bowls were some of the first to go, and some civil servants left to open up private businesses. In more recent years, even without the old guarantees, civil service jobs have regained their old popularity, providing long-term stability and good benefits.

xuésheng dēngjì biǎo 学生 登记 表			
xìngmíng 姓名 Name	niánlíng 年龄 Age	guójí 国籍 Nationality	
jǐnji 紧急 liánxírén 联系人 Emergency contacts	xìngmíng 姓名 Name	guānxì 关系 Relationship	zhíyè 职业 Occupation
1			
2			
3			

Character writing

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
宀	roof	安、宍
阝 (right)	city	都

- 1 Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

家 邮 那 宇

- 2 Match the words with the meanings.

1 家	a both, all
2 安	b that
3 都	c safe and stable
4 那	d family, home

- 3 Trace the characters in the boxes.



Review and practice

- 1 Put the words in the correct columns.

māma	dàxué	lǎoshī	yīyuàn
妈妈	大学	老师	医院
bàba	jiějie	yīshēng	jizhě
爸爸	姐姐	医生	记者

jīatíng chéngyuán	dìfang	zhíyè
家庭 成员	地方	职业
Family members	Places	Occupations

- 2 Put the words in brackets in the correct places in the sentences.

Lín Yuè shì lǎoshī Lín Huá shì lǎoshī yě
1 林月是老师，林华是老师。（也）

Tāmen shì lǎoshī dōu
2 她们是老师。（都）

Jiékè bù shì xuésheng Hāilì yě shì xuésheng bù
3 杰克不是学生，哈利也是学生。（不）

Tāmen dōu shì xuésheng bù
4 他们都是学生。（不）

- 3 Cross out the unnecessary 的 in the sentences.

Wǒ de māma zài xuéxiào gōngzuò
1 我的妈妈在学校工作。

Wǒ de bàba de míngzi shì Lín Guó'ān
2 我的爸爸的名字是林国安。

Zhè shì wǒ de zhàopiàn
3 这是我的照片。

- 4 Write as many sentences as you can with 不, 也, 和 and 都, using the words in the boxes.

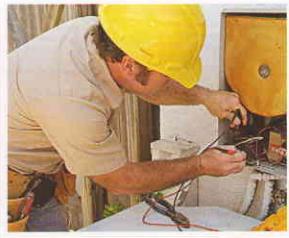
爸爸	哥哥	老师	学生	医生
māma	jiějie	jizhě	hùshi	

Vocabulary extension

1 Think of people you know who have these jobs.

dǎoyóu 导游	tour guide	gōngchéngshī 工程师	engineer
lǜshī 律师	lawyer	fúwùyuán 服务员	waiter, waitress
chúshī 厨师	chef	xiūlǐgōng 修理工	mechanic, repairman
mìshū 秘书	secretary	lǐfàshī 理发师	barber, hairdresser

2 Write the job names under the pictures.



Now work in pairs. Tell each other about these people.

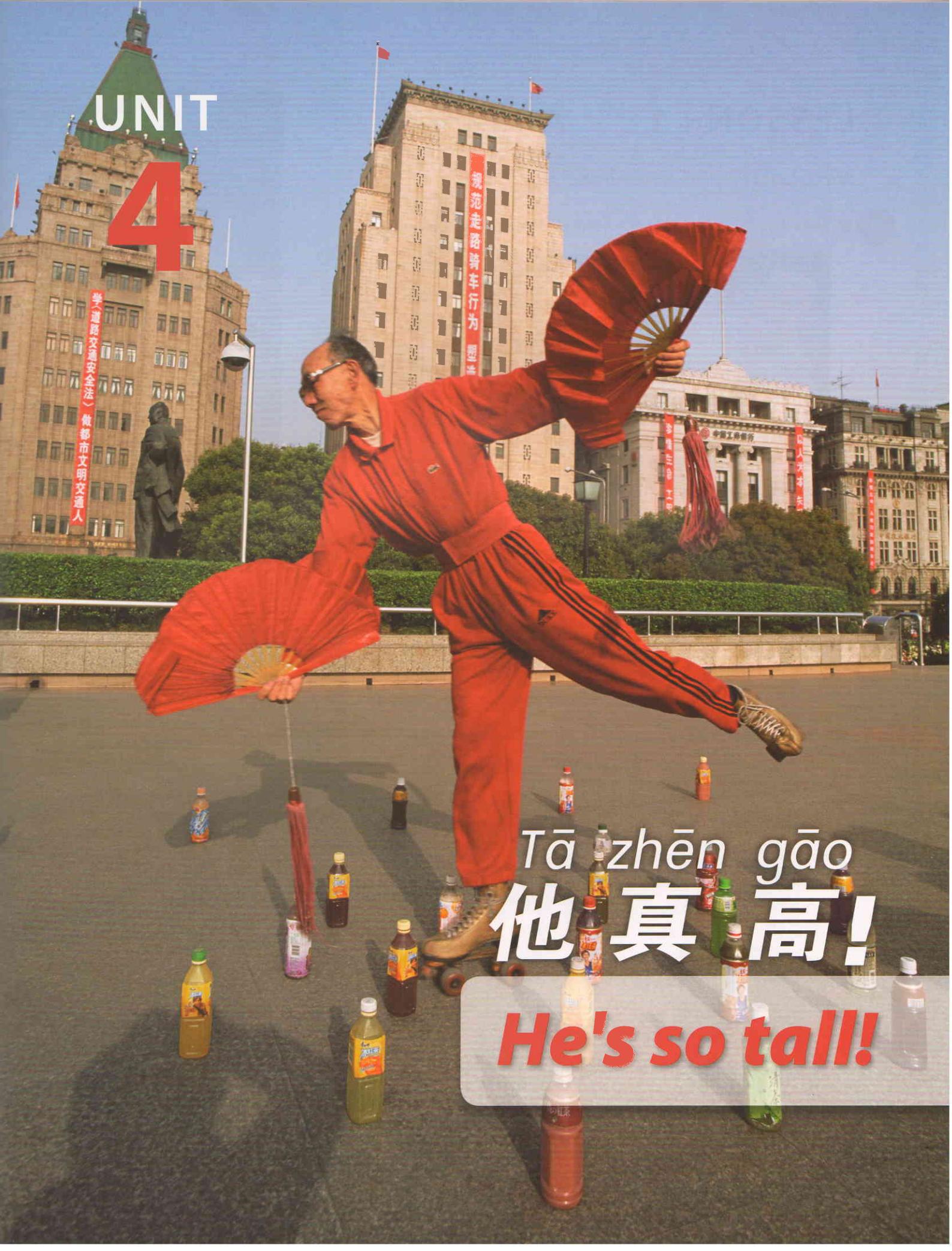
Vocabulary list

她	tā	pron.	she, her
妹妹	mèimei	n.	younger sister
这	zhè	pron.	this
弟弟	dìdi	n.	younger brother
和	hé	conj.	and
也	yě	adv.	also
学生	xuésheng	n.	student
记者	jìzhě	n.	journalist
爸爸	bàba	n.	father
做	zuò	v.	do
工作	gōngzuò	n./v.	work, job
他	tā	pron.	he, him
医生	yīshēng	n.	doctor
妈妈	māma	n.	mother
医院	yīyuàn	n.	hospital
都	dōu	adv.	both, all

家	jiā	n.	family, home
的	de	structural particle	
照片	zhàopiàn	n.	photo
哥哥	gēge	n.	elder brother
学校	xuéxiào	n.	school
老师	lǎoshī	n.	teacher
姐姐	jiějie	n.	elder sister
护士	hùshi	n.	nurse
导游	dǎoyóu	n.	tour guide
律师	lǜshī	n.	lawyer
厨师	chúshī	n.	chef
秘书	mìshū	n.	secretary
工程师	gōngchéngshī	n.	engineer
服务员	fúwùyuán	n.	waiter, waitress
修理工	xiūlǐgōng	n.	mechanic, repairman
理发师	lǐfàshī	n.	barber, hairdresser

UNIT

4



Tā zhēn gāo
他 真 高!

He's so tall!

LESSON | 1

Vocabulary and listening



1 Work in pairs. Discuss which adjectives describe these people.



- | | | |
|-----------------|--------------------------|---------------------|
| gāo
□ 高 tall | niánqīng
□ 年轻 young | kě' ài
□ 可爱 cute |
| kù
□ 酷 cool | shuài
□ 帅 handsome | ǎi
□ 矮 short |
| lǎo
□ 老 old | piàoliang
□ 漂亮 pretty | |

Now listen and check the adjectives you hear.



2 Listen to the conversation.

Anna and Wang Yu are talking about Yao Ming.

Ānnà Tā shì shéi Tā shì Yáo Míng shì ma
安娜：他是谁？他是姚明，是吗？

Wáng Yù Shì
王玉：是。

Ānnà Tā shì nǎlǐ rén
安娜：他是哪里人？

Wáng Yù Shàngghairén dànshì xiànzài zhù zài Měiguó
王玉：上海人，但是现在住在美国。

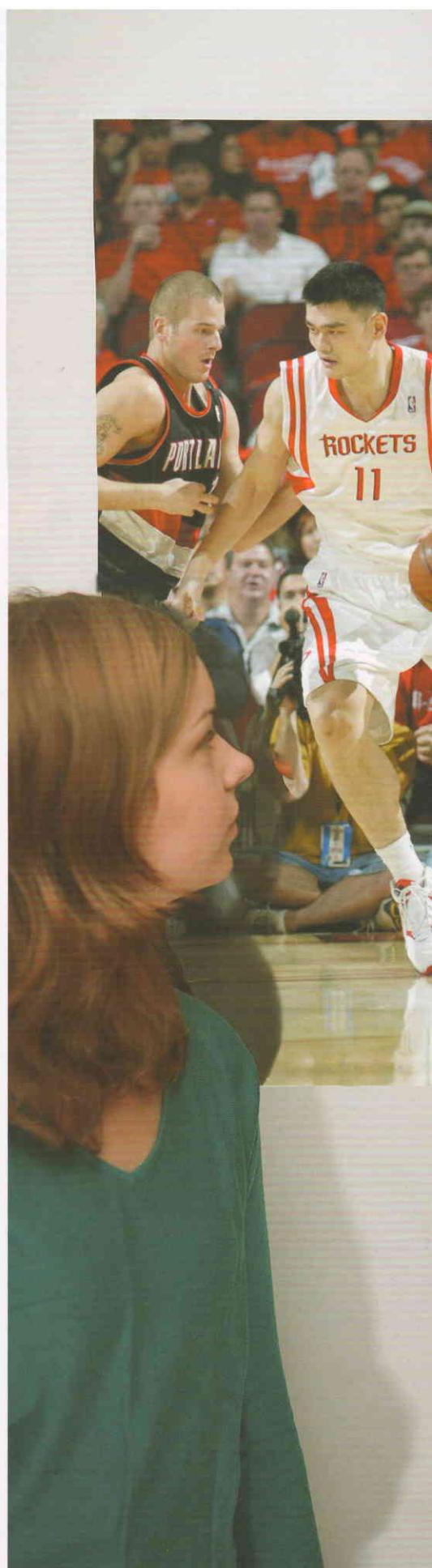
Ānnà Tā duō dà Sānshíwǔ suì
安娜：他多大？三十五岁？

Wáng Yù Wǒ bù zhīdào
王玉：我不知道。

Ānnà Tā zhēn gāo
安娜：他真高！

Wáng Yù Yě hěn shuài hěn kù Tā shì wǒ zuì
王玉：也很帅，很酷！他是我最

xǐhuān de lánqiú yùndòngyuán
喜欢的篮球运动员！





生词 New words

shéi	谁	who	gāo	高	tall
Shànghǎi	上海	Shanghai	shuài	帅	handsome
xiànzài	现在	now	kù	酷	cool
duō dà	多大	how old	zuì	最	most
sui	岁	year(s) old	xǐhuan	喜欢	like
zhīdào	知道	know	lánqiú	篮球	basketball
zhēn	真	really, so	yùndòngyuán	运动员	athlete



3 Listen again and answer the questions.

Yáo Míng shì nǎlǐ rén
1 姚明是哪里人?

Yáo Míng zhù zài nǎlǐ
2 姚明住在哪里?

Yáo Míng zuò shénme gōngzuò
3 姚明做什么工作?



4 Listen and number the people in the order you hear them.



a



b



c



d

5 Work in pairs. Choose a famous athlete you know and act out the conversation in Activity 2.

Pronunciation and speaking

The finals: ao, uei, en



- 1 Listen and number the sounds you hear.

ao ui (uei) en



- 2 Say the sentences aloud.

Zǎoshang hǎo Gāo lǎoshī

1 早上 好，高老师！

Suí lǎoshī shì Suí Wēi de bàba

2 隋老师是隋薇的爸爸。

Chén Zhēn shì Shēnzhèn rén

3 陈 真 是 深圳人。

Tā hěn shuài yě hěn kù

4 他 很 帅，也 很 酷！

Now listen and repeat.



- 3 Listen and say the words.

shéi	zuì	suì
1 谁	最	岁
duō dà	lánqiú	yùndòngyuán

2 多 大

xǐhuān

3 喜欢

篮球

知道

现在

- 4 Write notes about one of the people below.

David Beckham Serena Williams Michael Phelps

Tā Tā shì rén tā zhù zài
他 / 她 是 ____ 人，他 / 她 住 在 ____。

Tā Tā hěn yě hěn
他 / 她 很 ____，也 很 ____。

Tā Tā shì
他 / 她 是 ____。

- 5 Work in pairs.

Student A: Tell your partner about the person you have written about in Activity 4, but do not say their name. Use your notes to help you.

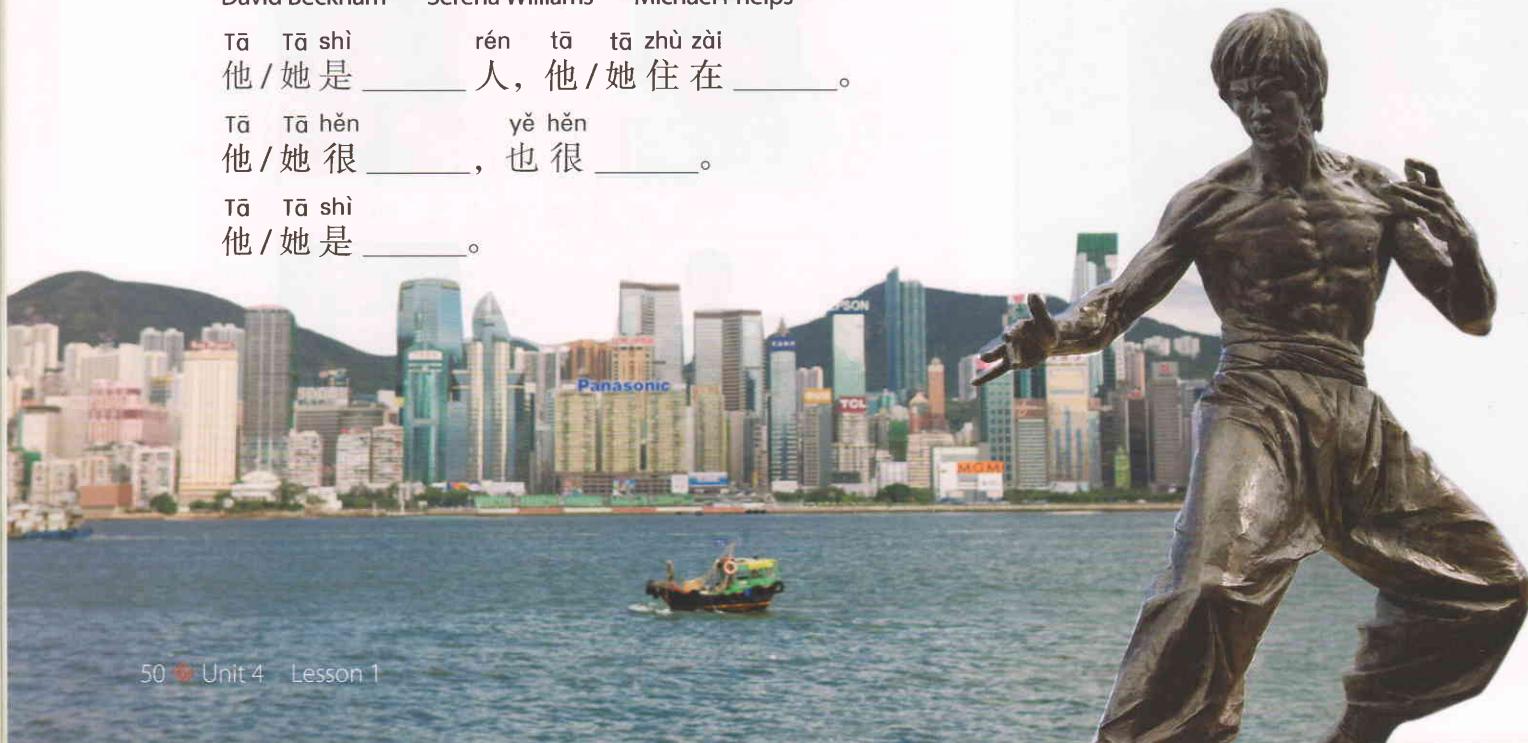
Student B: Listen and guess the person's identity.

Now change roles.

CHINESE TO GO
Welcoming and saying
goodbye to guests

1-39

Qǐng jìn	Please come in.
Mànzǒu	Goodbye. (literally: walk slowly)
Yīhuǐr jiàn	See you later!



LESSON | 2

Reading and writing

1 Match the words with the meanings.

- | | |
|------------|------------------|
| xìngmíng | a place of birth |
| 1 姓名 | b nationality |
| niánlíng | c full name |
| 2 年龄 | d age |
| chūshēngdì | e |
| 3 出生地 | f |
| guójí | g |
| 4 国籍 | h |

1-40

2 Read Wang Yu's Sina profile and check the true statements.

- Wáng Yù shì Shànghǎirén
 1 王玉是上海人。
 Xióngmāo zhēn kù!
 2 熊猫真酷！
 Yáo Míng hěn shuài
 3 姚明很帅。
 Lǐ Xiǎolóng hěn kě'ài
 4 李小龙很可爱。

3 Answer the questions.

- Wáng Yù duō dà
 1 王玉多大？
 Wáng Yù de diànzǐ yóuxiāng shì shénme
 2 王玉的电子邮箱是什么？
 Wáng Yù zuì xǐhuan de yùndòngyuán shì shéi
 3 王玉最喜欢的运动员是谁？
 Wáng Yù zuì xǐhuan de yǎnyuán shì shéi
 4 王玉最喜欢的演员是谁？

生词 New words

xìngmíng	full name	dòngwù	animal
姓名		动物	animal
niánlíng	age	xióngmāo	panda
年龄		熊猫	panda
chūshēngdì	place of birth	kě'ài	cute
出生地		可爱	cute
guójí	nationality	yǎnyuán	演员
国籍			actor, actress
diànzǐ yóuxiāng	email box/ address		
电子邮箱			

我的资料

我的档案

xìngmíng: Wáng Yù
 年龄: èrshí suì
 chūshēngdì: Běijīng
 国籍: Zhōngguó
 diànzǐ yóuxiāng
 电子邮箱: wangyu0521@DC.com

zui xǐhuan de dòngwù: xióngmāo
 最喜欢的动物: 熊猫 —— 可爱!

zui xǐhuan de yùndòngyuán: Yáo Míng
 最喜欢的运动员: 姚明 —— 很帅!

zui xǐhuan de yǎnyuán: Lǐ Xiǎolóng
 最喜欢的演员: 李小龙 —— 真酷!

博客等级: 22
 博客积分: 806
 博客访问: 5,631,496

4 Match the questions with the information they ask for.

1 Tā duō dà
她 多 大?

2 Tā jiào shénme míngzì 她叫什么名字？

3 Tā zuì xǐhuān de yǎnyuán shì shéi
她 最 喜 欢 的 演 员 是 谁 ?

4 她最喜欢的运动员 是谁？

5 Tā zuì xǐhuān de dòngwù shì shénme
她 最 喜 欢 的 动 物 是 什 么 ?

6 Tā de diànzǐ yóuxāng shì shénme?

7 她的出生地是哪里?

a xìngmíng 姓名

chūshēng

chūshēngdì diànzǐ yóuxiāng
出生地 电子 邮箱

c 出生地

e zuì xǐhuan de rén hé dòngwù 最喜欢的人和动物

5 Design an online personal profile for yourself.

Language in use

Interrogative pronoun

shéi 谁

1 Look at the sentences.

Subject (noun / 谁)	Predicate	
	Verb	Object (noun / 谁)
Tā 她	shì 是	wǒ mèimei 我 妹妹。
Tā 她	shì 是	shéi 谁?
Shéi 谁	shì 是	nǐ mèimei 你 妹妹?
Wáng Yù 王 玉	rènshi 认识	Mǎkè 马克。
Wáng Yù 王 玉	rènshi 认识	shéi 谁?
Shéi 谁	rènshi 认识	Mǎkè 马克?

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 The question word 谁 can be used at both the beginning and the end of a question.
 - 2 谁 means "who" or "whom".
 - 3 谁 can only be used in a sentence with 是.

2 Write questions about the underlined parts of the sentences using 谁.

1 Tā shì wǒ māma
她 是 我 妈妈。

2 Wáng Yù shì wǒ mèimei
王 玉 是 我 妹妹。

3 Zhè shì tā bāba
这是他爸爸。

Turn to page 164 for grammar reference.

Numbers in Chinese

1 Look at the numbers.

Chinese	English	Chinese	English
十 shí	ten	十一 shí yī	eleven
二十 èr shí	twenty	十五 shí wǔ	fifteen
三十 sān shí	thirty	二十一 èr shí yī	twenty-two
四十 sì shí	forty	五十八 wǔ shí bā	fifty-eight

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 Chinese numbers such as twenty, thirty, forty, etc are formed by adding an affix to the characters for 2 to 9.
 - 2 Chinese numbers such as twenty, thirty, forty, etc are formed by adding the character for 10 after the characters for 2 to 9.
 - 3 Chinese numbers such as eleven, fifteen, twenty-two, etc are formed by adding the characters for 1 to 9 after the characters for 10 to 90.

2 Write the numbers in Chinese.

- 1** fifty **2** seventy **3** twelve **4** thirty-three

Turn to page 164 for grammar reference.

Asking about age using

duō dà
多 大

1 Look at the sentences.

Subject	Predicate	
Mǎkè 马克	duō dà 多 大?	How old is Mark?
Tā 他	shíjiǔ suì 十九 岁。	He is 19 years old.
Tā Tā 她/他	duō dà 多 大?	How old is she/he?
Tā Tā 她/他	sì suì 四 岁。	She/He is 4 years old.

Now answer the questions.

- 1 What does 多大 mean?
 - 2 Where is 多大 positioned in the Chinese sentence?

2 Write questions for the answers using 多大.

Turn to page 165 for grammar reference.

zhēn hěn 真 / 很 + adjective

1 Look at the sentences.

Subject	Predicate	
	Adverb	Adjective
Wǒ 我	zhēn hěn 真 / 很	gāoxìng 高兴。
I am really/very happy.		
Nǐ māma 你 妈妈	zhēn hěn 真 / 很	
Your mum is really/very young.		

Now answer the questions.

- 1 In the English sentences, which word appears before adjectives such as “happy” and “young”, which is not used in Chinese?
 - 2 Are there any differences in word order between these English and Chinese sentences?

2 Translate the sentences into English.

- Yáo Míng hěn shuài
1 姚明很帅。

Bàba zhēn gāo
2 爸爸真高！

Wǒ de lǎoshī zhēn niánqīng
3 我的老师真年轻！

Turn to page 165 for grammar reference.

LESSON | 3

Communication activity

- 1 Work in pairs. Choose the three coolest individuals of all time. Think about the reasons for your choice.

Name	Reasons to support your choice
míngzì 名字	lǐyóu 理由

- A: shì zuì kù de yǎnyuán
Bruce Lee 是最酷的演员，
tā de Zhōngguó gōngfu hěn bàng
他的中国功夫很棒。
Wǒ xǐhuan
B: 我喜欢 Michael Jackson，
tā shì zuì kù de míngxīng
他最酷的明星。



- 2 Work with another pair. Discuss your choice of the coolest people and explain your reasons.

Now vote for the coolest individual of all time.

► Turn to pages 151 and 157 for more speaking practice.

Cultural Corner

I was born in the Year of the Horse.

The Chinese zodiac operates on a twelve-year cycle, using the following twelve animals: Rat, Ox, Tiger, Rabbit, Dragon, Snake, Horse, Sheep, Monkey, Rooster, Dog and Pig.

Each animal has certain characteristics that people born under the sign are said to share. Horoscopes were developed around these animal signs to predict a person's personality and destiny.

For example, people born in the Year of the Horse (1966, 1978, 1990 and 2002) are considered to be cheerful, popular and hardworking.

The Chinese zodiac can be used to indirectly find out how old people are, as the age of a person can be calculated through asking their zodiac sign.

Character writing

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
土	earth	在、地
氵	water	江、演

- 1 Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

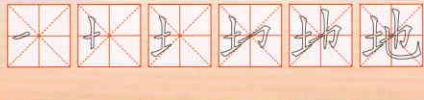
墨 澳 坎 法

- 2 Match the words with the meanings.

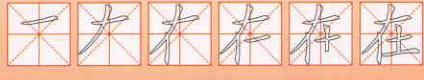
chūshēngdì 1 出生地	a Shanghai
zài 2 在	b pretty
piàoliang 3 漂亮	c place of birth
Shànghǎi 4 上海	d at, in

- 3 Trace the characters in the boxes.

地



在



海



漂



Review and practice

- 1 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

zhè mèimei wǒ shì
1 这 / 妹妹 / 我 / 是 /。

piàoliang yě hěn tā hěn gāo
2 漂亮 / 也 / 很 / 她 / 很 / 高 / !

yùndòngyuán shì tā lánqiú
3 运动员 / 是 / 她 / 篮球 /。

shí bā suì tā
4 十八 / 岁 / 她 /。

- 2 Put the sentences in Activity 1 in the correct order to make a coherent passage.

- 3 Make as many sentences as you can using 真 and 很 and the words in the box.

māma	niánqīng	piàoliang
妈妈	年轻	漂亮
dàjiā	nǐmen	gāo
大家	你们	高
Wáng xiǎozi	míngxīng	shuài
王 小姐	明星	帅
gāoxìng	jiějie	xìnggǎn
高兴	姐姐	性感

Vocabulary extension

1 Look at the expressions used to describe people.



tóufa cháng
头发 长



tóufa duǎn
头发 短



gèzi gāo
个子 高

gèzi ǎi
个子 矮

2 Describe the people using the appropriate expressions.



Tā de _____ hěn
1 她(的 _____)很 _____。

Tā hěn
2 他很 _____。

Tā de _____ zhēn
他(的 _____)真 _____。

Vocabulary list

谁	shéi	pron. who
上海	Shànghǎi	n. Shanghai
现在	xiànzài	n. now
多大	duō dà	how old
岁	suì	n. year(s) old
知道	zhīdào	v. know
真	zhēn	adv. really, so
高	gāo	adj. tall
帅	shuài	adj. handsome
酷	kù	adj. cool
最	zuì	adv. most
喜欢	xǐhuan	v. like
篮球	lánqiú	n. basketball
运动员	yùndòngyuán	n. athlete
姓名	xìngmíng	n. full name
年龄	niánlíng	n. age

出生地	chūshēngdì	n.	place of birth
国籍	guójí	n.	nationality
电子邮箱	diànzǐ yóuxiāng	n.	email box/address
动物	dòngwù	n.	animal
熊猫	xióngmāo	n.	panda
可爱	kě ài	adj.	cute
演员	yǎnyuán	n.	actor, actress
老	lǎo	adj.	old
年轻	niánqīng	adj.	young
漂亮	piàoliang	adj.	pretty
矮	ǎi	adj.	short (height)
头发	tóufa	n.	hair
长	cháng	adj.	long
短	duǎn	adj.	short (length)
个子	gèzi	n.	(person) height

Review 1

Vocabulary

1 Match the pictures with the words.



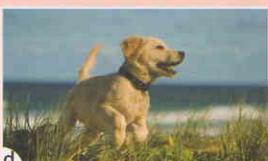
a



b



c



d



e



f

1 医生	yīshēng	4 中文	Zhōngwén
2 学校	xuéxiào	5 动物	dòngwù
3 学生	xuéshēng	6 记者	jìzhě

2 Write ten words with the characters in the box.

shén	xué	dàn	gōng
生	么	住	识
哪	可	认	片
在	作	是	里
医	照	院	爱

3 Complete the conversations with the words in the box.

nǐ hǎo	jiào	míngxīng	rén
姐姐	漂亮	多大	帅

1 A: Tā shì nǎ guó _____?
B: 他 是 哪 国 _____?

Tā shì Měiguórén
B: 他 是 美 国 人。

2 A: _____!

Qǐngwèn nǐ shénme míngzì
请问，你 什 么 名 字 ？

Wǒ jiào Wáng Yù
B: 我 叫 王 玉。

3 A: Tā shì nǐ ma
她 是 你 吗 ？

Tā zhēn
她 真 _____。

Bù tā shì wǒ māma
B: 不，她 是 我 妈 妈。

Nǐ rěnshi Lǐ Xiǎolóng ma
4 A: 你 认 识 李 小 龙 吗 ？

Tā shì
他 是 _____。

Wǒ rěnshi tā tā hěn
B: 我 认 识 他，他 很 _____。

Nǐ shì xuéshēng ma Nǐ
5 A: 你 是 学 生 吗 ？ 你 _____ ？

Wǒ shì xuéshēng wǒ shíwǔ suì
B: 我 是 学 生，我 十 五 岁。

Integrated skills

1 Listen and circle the words you hear.

Tā shì shéi

A: 他是谁?

Tā shì wǒ gēge dìdi

B: 他是我(哥哥/弟弟)。

Tā duō dà?

A: 他多大?

Tā sānshí suì èrshí suì

B: 他(三十岁/二十岁)。

Tā zhù zài nǎlǐ

A: 他住在哪里?

Tā zhù zài Àodàiliyà Jiānádà

B: 他住在(澳大利亚/加拿大)。

Tā zuò shénme gōngzuò

A: 他做什么工作?

Tā shì xuésheng yīshēng

B: 他是(学生/医生)。

3 Work in pairs. Complete the conversations.



Nǐ hǎo

1 A: 你好! _____?

Wǒ jiào

B: 我叫_____。_____?

A: _____。

Rènshi nǐ hěn gāoxìng

B: 认识你很高兴。



Zhè shì wǒ māma zhè shì wǒ bàba

2 A: 这是我妈妈,这是我爸爸。

B: _____?

Tā shì wǒ jiějie

A: 她是我姐姐。

B: _____?

Tā shì hùshi

A: 她是护士。

B: _____?

A: _____。

2 Choose the correct answers to the questions.

Shídīfū shì Yīngguórén ma

1 史蒂夫是英国人吗?

Shì dànshì tā zhù zài Běijīng

a 是,但是他住在北京。

Bù tā bù zhù zài Lúndūn

b 不,他不住在伦敦。

Nǐ zài yīyuàn gōngzuò ma

2 你在医院工作吗?

Shì wǒ shì yīshēng

a 是,我是医生。

Bù wǒ bù shì xuésheng

b 不,我不是学生。

Nǐ zuì xǐhuān de míngxīng shì shéi

3 你最喜欢的明星是谁?

Lǐ Xiǎolóng

a 李小龙。

Wǒ bù shì míngxīng

b 我不是明星。

4 Complete the Sina profile with your own information.

Enjoy Chinese

lǎo	老	old
lǎorén	老人	old man
lǎoshī	老师	teacher
lǎobǎn	老板	boss



The original meaning of 老 is “old”. Its ancient shape looks like an old man walking with a crutch.

Now work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about each other's profiles.

5 Complete the passage with the words in the box.

Zhōngguó 中国 yùndòngyuán 运动员 Měiguó 美国 xǐhuān 喜欢

gāo 高 bàba hé māma 爸爸和妈妈 xuéshēng 学生 yīyuàn 医院

Tā shì wǒ zuì xǐhuān de lánqiú tā
他是我最喜欢的篮球_____，他
很_____. 他是_____人，但是他现在
住在_____。

Tā dōu zhù zài Zhōngguó tā jiějie
他_____都住在中国，他姐姐
hé dìdi yě zhù zài Zhōngguó Tā jiějie shì hùshī
和弟弟也住在中国。他姐姐是护士，
zài 在_____工作，他弟弟是_____，也
shì lánqiú yùndòngyuán tāmen dōu lánqiú
是篮球运动员，他们都_____篮球。

Tā shì Yáo Míng
他是姚明！





BJJ-07-D

UNIT 5

Zhè shì wǒ de
这是我的
diànhuà hào mǎ
电话号码。

Here's my phone number.

LESSON | 1

Vocabulary and listening



1 Match the pictures with the words.



diànhuà

1 电话

shǒujī

2 手机

hàomǎ

3 号码

gōngyuán

4 公园

Now listen and say the words.



2 Write the telephone numbers you hear.

1 _____

2 _____

3 _____

Now listen again and check your answers.



3 Listen to the conversation.

Yeong-min is asking Steve for his address and phone number.

Yǒngmín Shǐdīfū nǐ de diànhuà hàomǎ shì ma
永民： 史蒂夫， 你的 电话 号码 是 55546998 吗？

Shǐdīfū Shì zhè shì wǒ jiā de diànhuà hàomǎ
史蒂夫： 是， 这是我家的 电话 号码。

Yǒngmín Nǐ de shǒujī hàomǎ shì duōshao
永民： 你的 手机 号码 是 多少？

Shǐdīfū Wǒ de shǒujī hàomǎ shì
史蒂夫： 我的 手机 号码 是 12081345761。

Yǒngmín Nǐ zhù zài nǎlǐ
永民： 你 住 在 哪里？

Shǐdīfū Wǒ zhù zài Gōngyuán Lù shíjiǔ hào.
史蒂夫： 我 住 在 公园 路 19 号。

Yǒngmín Nǐ de diànzǐ yóuxiāng shì shénme
永民： 你的 电子 邮箱 是 什么？

Shǐdīfū steve@DC.com.
史蒂夫： steve@DC.com.

生词 New words

diànhuà	telephone	gōngyuán	park
电话		公园	
hàomǎ	number, code	lù	road
号码		路	
shǒujī	mobile phone	hào	number, date (spoken)
手机		号	
duōshao	what, how many/much		
多少			



4 Listen again and answer the questions.

Shǐdīfū jiā de diànhuà hàomǎ shì duōshao
1 史蒂夫家的 电话 号码 是 多少?

Shǐdīfū zhù zài nǎlǐ
2 史蒂夫 住 在 哪里?

Shǐdīfū de diànzǐ yóuxiāng shì shénme
3 史蒂夫的 电子 邮箱 是 什么?



5 Listen and check the numbers you hear.

Yǒngmǐn zhù zài Dàxué Lù hào
1 永民 住 在 大学 路 _____ 号。

- a 313 b 213

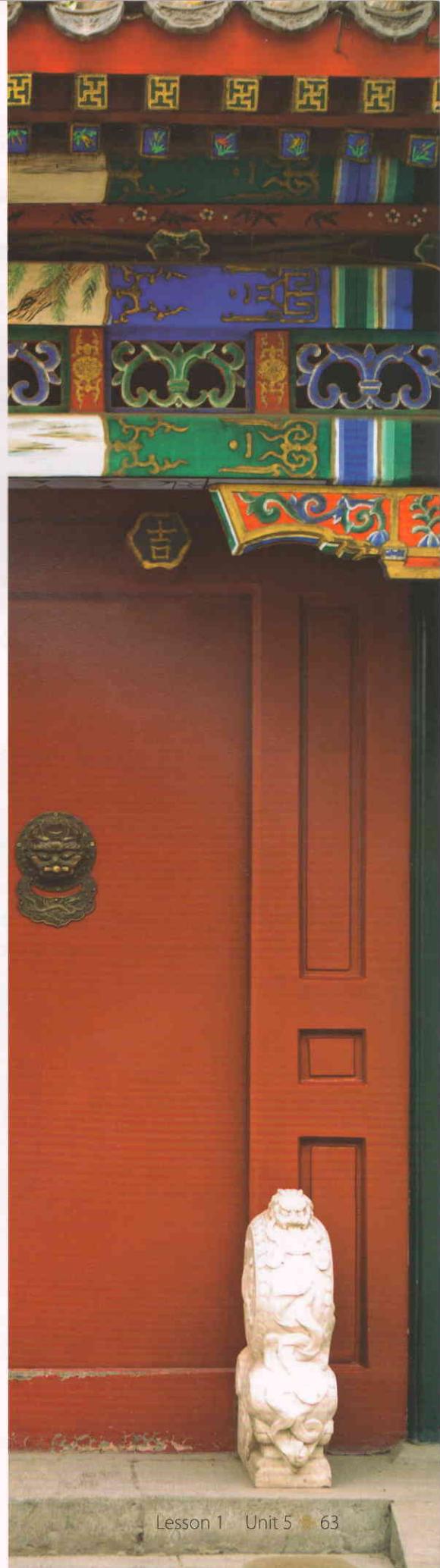
Tā jiā de diànhuà hàomǎ shì
2 他家的 电话 号码 是 _____。

- a 55592134 b 55591234

Tā de shǒujī hàomǎ shì
3 他的 手机 号码 是 _____。

- a 12901052227 b 12910055227

6 Work in pairs. Act out the conversation in Activity 3 using your own addresses and phone numbers.



Pronunciation and speaking

The tones of

bù
不

- 1 Look at the tone marks for 不. How does the tone of 不 change?

bù gāoxìng
不 高兴

bù niánqīng
不 年轻

bù hǎo
不好

bú shì
不是

Now listen and say the words.

- 2 Listen and write the correct tones for 不.

1 不 可爱

5 不 高

2 不 帅

6 不 酷

3 不 姓

7 不 漂亮

4 不 叫

8 不 认识

- 3 Read the sentences aloud. Make sure you change the tone of 不 when necessary.

Wǒ bù xìng Wáng
1 我不姓 王。

Wǒ bù zhīdào
2 我不知道。

Tā bù xǐhuān Yáo Míng
3 他不喜欢 姚 明。

Zhè bù shì wǒ de yóuxiāng
4 这不是我的 邮箱。

Tā bù niánqīng
5 她不 年轻。

Now listen and repeat.

1-49

- 4 Listen and say the words.

diànhuà	shǒujī	hàomǎ
1 电话	手机	号码
zhè shì	duōshao	shénme
2 这是	多少	什么

nǐ de	diànnzǐ	yóuxiāng
3 你的	电子	邮箱

- 5 Work in groups. Ask and answer questions about phone numbers and email addresses. Use the prompts below to help you.

Nǐ de diànhuà hàomǎ shì duōshao
你 的 电 话 号 码 是 多 少 ?

Nǐ de diànnzǐ yóuxiāng shì shénme
你 的 电 子 邮 箱 是 什 么 ?

1-48

CHINESE TO GO

Receiving and ending phone calls

Wèi

喂。 Hello!

Nǐ zhǎo shéi ya
你 找 谁 呀 ? Who do you want to speak to?

Dǎ cuò le
打 错 了。 Wrong number.

Duìbuqǐ
对 不 起。 Sorry.

LESSON | 2

Reading and writing

- 1 Look at the mobile phone screen and guess the meaning of the words.



- 2 Read the messages between Mark and Wang Yu and answer the questions.

Mǎkè de xīn dìzhǐ shì shénme

1 马克的新地址是什么?

Mǎkè de xīn diànhuà hào mǎ shì duōshao

2 马克的新电话号码是多少?

Wáng Yù de shǒujī hào mǎ shì duōshao

3 王玉的手机号码是多少?

Ānnà zhù zài nǎlǐ

4 安娜住在哪里?



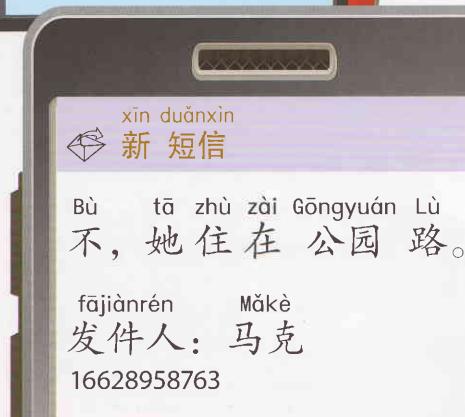
- 3 Read the text message and write a reply.



Nǐ hǎo Wǒ de dìzhǐ shì
你好! 我的地址是……

生词 New words

xīn	new
dìzhǐ	address
dàxué	university
gōngyù	block of flats, apartment building
fángjiān	room
kěyǐ	may, can
gěi	give, to
dǎ diànhuà	make a phone call
fājiàn rén	sender
shōudào	receive
xièxie	thank you



4 Work in pairs.

Language in use

Student A: You have lost your suitcase. Ask Student B at the Lost Luggage Office to help you find it.

Student B: You work at the Lost Luggage Office. Make notes about Student A's lost suitcase. Use the prompts below to help you.

Question word

duōshao
多少

1 Choose the correct answers to the questions.

Tā de shǒujī hào mǎ shì duōshao?

1 他的 手机 号码 是 多少?

Tā de shǒujī hào mǎ shì

a 他的 手机 号码 是 13323455928。

Tā zhù zài Gōngyuán Lù èrshíyī hào

b 他 住 在 公园 路 21 号。

Mǎkè de fángjiānhào shì duōshao?

2 马克的 房间号 是 多少?

Mǎkè bù zhù zài wǔlíngbā

a 马克 不 住 在 508 。

Mǎkè de fángjiānhào shì wǔlíngliù

b 马克 的 房间号 是 506 。

Shǐdīfū zhù zài Gōngyuán Lù duōshao hào?

3 史蒂夫 住 在 公园 路 多少 号?

Shíjiǔ hào

a 19 号。

Dàxué Lù

b 大学 路。



Nǐ jiào shénme míngzì
你 叫 什 么 名 字?

Nǐ shì nǎlǐ rén
你 是 哪 里 人?

Nǐ de diànhuà hào mǎ shì duōshao
你 的 电 话 号 码 是 多 少?

Nǐ de dìzhǐ shì shénme
你 的 地 址 是 什 么?

Nǐ de diànzǐ yóuxiāng shì shénme
你 的 电 子 邮 箱 是 什 么?



- 2 Look at the pictures and write a question using **多少** for each and an appropriate answer.



1

A: _____?

B: _____.



2

A: _____?

B: _____.

► Turn to page 165 for grammar reference.

Word order of Chinese addresses

- 1 Look at the phrases.

Gōngyuán Lù shíjiǔ hào
公园 路 19 号

Dàxué Lù Dàxuéshēng Gōngyù wǔlíngliù hào fángjiān
大学路 大学生 公寓 506 号 房间

Now check the correct explanation.

- 1 The word order of Chinese addresses goes from big to small.
- 2 The word order of Chinese addresses goes from small to big.

- 2 Write the addresses in Chinese.

- 1 No. 8 University Road
- 2 Room 203, Yu Building, No. 20 Park Road

► Turn to page 165 for grammar reference.

The pronunciation of the number "1"



- 1 Listen to the phrases.

- 1 yī èr sān sì
一 二 三 四
- 2 yī tiān
一 天
- 3 55531213
- 4 128 号 房间

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 The number "1" is pronounced *yī* in ordinary counting.
- 2 The number "1" is pronounced *yao* in ordinary counting.
- 3 The number "1" is pronounced *yao* in telephone and room numbers.



- 2 Read the sentences aloud.

- 1 21 岁
- 2 Fángjiān hào shì
房间 号 是 1280。
- 3 Diànhuà hào mǎ shì
电话 号码 是 3181。
- 4 gè fángjiān
11 个 房间

Now listen and repeat.



► Turn to page 165 for grammar reference.

LESSON | 3

Communication activity

1 Work in pairs.

Student A:

Your school is in the process of updating its student records. You are asked to provide the following information to the school office:

- Your emergency contact number. The number should include the country code and area code. xuéshēng kǎ
- Your student card number (学生 卡 hàomǎ 号码).

Student B:

You work in the school office and are in the process of updating the student records. You are asked to do the following:

- Write down the student's emergency contact number. xuéshēng kǎ
- Record the student card number (学生 卡 hàomǎ 号码).

2 Work in pairs. Act out the conversation using the information you prepared in Activity 1.

3 Change roles and act out the conversation again.

Cultural Corner

The Chinese way of thinking: from large to small

What is the date today? The answer in Chinese could be 2009年9月19号 (19 September 2009). Chinese people tend to organize their thoughts from large to small, from general to specific, or from collective to individual. You can find this phenomenon in various aspects of Chinese tradition. In the common Chinese address format, for example, 中国北京市海淀区北京外国语大学9号楼504房间, the sequence goes from larger areas to smaller ones. This contrasts with Western formats which are usually from smaller to larger areas, for example, Room 504, No. 9 Building, Beijing Foreign Studies University, Haidian District, Beijing, China.

► Turn to pages 152 and 158 for more speaking practice.

Character writing

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
讠	speech	认识、话
辵	walk	这、退

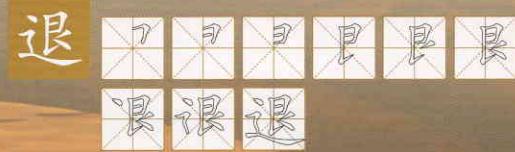
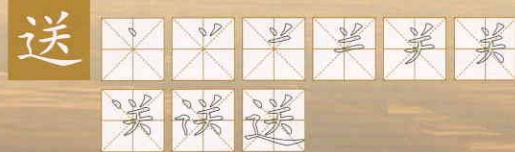
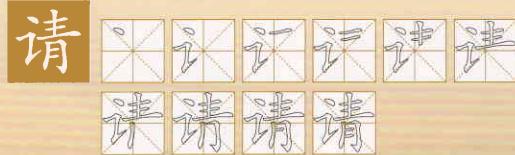
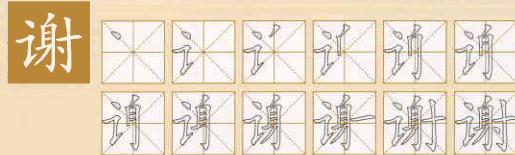
1 Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

记 送 谁 过

2 Match the words with the meanings.

- | | |
|---------|-------------|
| fāsòng | a excuse me |
| 1 发送 | b thanks |
| tuìchū | c send |
| 2 退出 | d exit |
| xièxie | |
| 3 谢谢 | |
| qǐngwèn | |
| 4 请问 | |

3 Trace the characters in the boxes.



Review and practice



1 Listen and check the numbers you hear.

- 1 a 88346693 b 88384639
2 a 12942355734 b 12943257534

2 Match the questions with the answers.

- Nǐ jiā de diànhuà hào shì duōshao
1 你家的 电话 号码 是 多少?
Nǐ de fángjiānhào shì duōshao
2 你的 房间号 是 多少?
Wǒ de shǒujī hào shì nǐ de ne
3 我的 手机 号码 是 17978332624, 你的呢?
Zhè shì nǐ de diànhuà hào ma
4 这是 你的 电话 号码 吗?
Nǐ zhù zài wǔlíngbā hào fángjiān ma

- 5 你住在 508 号 房间 吗?

- Bù zhè bù shì wǒ de diànhuà hào ma
a 不, 这不是 我的 电话 号码。
b 010-23897768。
c 是。
Yāoyāosān
d 113。
Wǒ de shǒujī hào shì
e 我的 手机 号码 是 19810787643。

3 Write questions with **多少** for the answers.

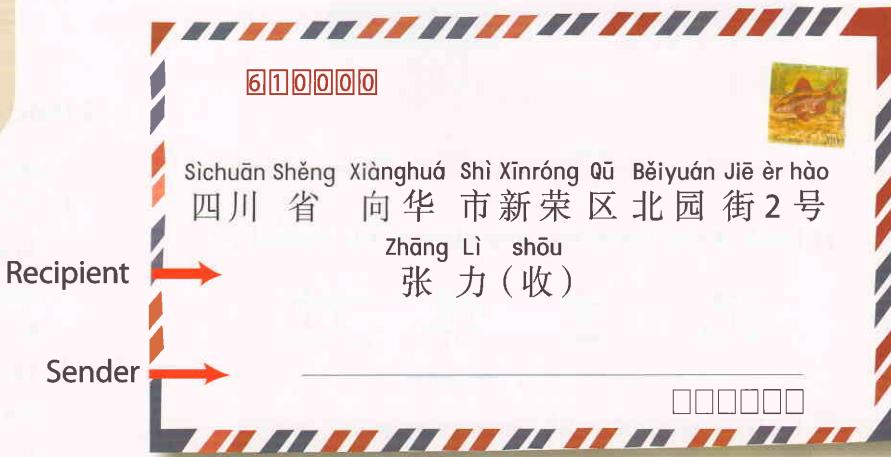
- sānlíngbāqī hào fángjiān
1 3087 号 房间。
Gōngyuán Lù shíjiǔ hào
2 公园 路 19 号。
3 72298111。

Vocabulary extension

1 Read the words in the box.

shěng	省	qū	区
province			district
shì	市	jiē	街
city			street

2 Look at the envelope.



Now add your address as the sender.

Vocabulary list

电话	diànhuà	n.	telephone
号码	hàomǎ	n.	number, code
手机	shǒujī	n.	mobile phone
多少	duōshao	pron.	what, how many/much
公园	gōngyuán	n.	park
路	lù	n.	road
号	hào	n.	number, date (spoken)
新	xīn	adj.	new
地址	dìzhǐ	n.	address
大学	dàxué	n.	university
公寓	gōngyù	n.	block of flats, apartment building
房间	fángjiān	n.	room
可以	kěyǐ	v.	may, can

给	gěi	v./prep.	give, to
打电话	dǎ diànhuà		make a phone call
发件人	fājiàn rén	n.	sender
收到	shōudào	v.	receive
谢谢	xièxie	v.	thank you
收件箱	shōujianxiāng	n.	inbox
发送	fāsòng	v.	send
短信	duǎnxìn	n.	message
退出	tuichū	v.	exit, go back
省	shěng	n.	province
市	shì	n.	city
区	qū	n.	district
街	jiē	n.	street

UNIT

6

道
惟
久

Jīntiān jǐ hào
今天几号?

What's the date today?

LESSON | 1

Vocabulary and listening

1-55

1 Number the months in the order you hear them.

- | | | |
|---|---|--|
| Wǔyuè
<input type="checkbox"/> a 五月 | Qīyuè
<input type="checkbox"/> c 七月 | Yīyuè
<input type="checkbox"/> e 一月 |
| Liùyuè
<input type="checkbox"/> b 六月 | Jiǔyuè
<input type="checkbox"/> d 九月 | Èryuè
<input type="checkbox"/> f 二月 |

Now listen again and say the months.

1-56

2 Number the dates in the order you hear them.

- | | |
|--|--|
| Èryuè jiǔ hào
<input type="checkbox"/> a 二月 九号 | Èryuè wǔ hào
<input type="checkbox"/> c 二月 五号 |
| Qīyuè shíqī hào
<input type="checkbox"/> b 七月 十七号 | Liùyuè sān hào
<input type="checkbox"/> d 六月 三号 |

Now listen again and say the dates.

1-57

3 Number the days in the order you hear them.

- | | |
|---|---|
| Xīngqīsān
<input type="checkbox"/> a 星期三 | Xīngqīwǔ
<input type="checkbox"/> b 星期五 |
| Xīngqīsì
<input type="checkbox"/> c 星期四 | Xīngqīliù
<input type="checkbox"/> d 星期六 |
| Xīngqī'èr
<input type="checkbox"/> e 星期二 | Xīngqīyī
<input type="checkbox"/> f 星期一 |
| Xīngqīrì Xīngqītiān
<input type="checkbox"/> g 星期日 / 星期天 | |

- | | |
|-----------|--|
| Monday | |
| Tuesday | |
| Wednesday | |
| Thursday | |
| Friday | |
| Saturday | |
| Sunday | |

Now match them with the days in English.



1-58

4 Listen to the conversation.

Mark and Yeong-min are talking about birthdays.

- Mǎkè Yǒngmín Èryuè jiǔ hào shì
马克：永民，二月九号是
Wáng Yù de shēngrì
王玉的生日。
Yǒngmín Zhēn de ma Jǐntiān jǐ hào
永民：真的吗？今天几号？
Mǎkè Jǐntiān Èryuè wǔ hào
马克：今天二月五号。
Yǒngmín Jiǔ hào xīngqī jǐ
永民：九号星期几？
Mǎkè Xīngqītiān Wǒmen qǐng tā
马克：星期天。我们请她
chīfàn zěnmeyàng
吃饭，怎么样？



生词 New words

Éryuè 二月	February	chī 吃	eat
yuè 月	month	qù 去	go
shēngrì 生日	birthday	chúfáng 厨房	kitchen
zhēn de 真的	really	zěnmeyàng 怎么样	how about
jīntiān 今天	today	nàli 那里	there
jǐ 几	how many	Zhōngcān 中餐	Chinese food
Xīngqītiān 星期天	Sunday	cān 餐	cuisine, meal
Xīngqī 星期	week	hăochī 好吃	tasty
wǒmen 我们	we, us	méi wèntí 没问题	no problem
chīfàn 吃饭	have a meal		

Yǒngmín Hǎo qù nǎlǐ
永民：好，去哪里？

Mǎkè Qù Māma Chúfáng
马克：去“妈妈厨房”

zěnmeyàng Nàli de Zhōngcān
怎么样？那里的 中餐

hěn hăochī
很好吃。

Yǒngmín Hǎo méi wèntí
永民：好，没问题。



5 Listen again and answer the questions.

Wáng Yù de shēngrì shì jǐ hào
1 王玉的生日是几号？

Wáng Yù de shēngrì shì xīngqī jǐ
2 王玉的生日是星期几？

Jīntiān jǐ hào Xīngqī jǐ
3 今天几号？星期几？

Tāmen qù nǎlǐ chī Zhōngcān
4 他们去哪里吃 中餐？

6 Work in pairs. Act out the conversation in Activity 4 using your friends' birthdays.

Pronunciation and speaking

The initials: j, q, x

1-59

1 Listen and say the words.

jíejie	jīntiān	fángjiān
1 姐姐	今天	房间
2 请问	niánqīng	lánqiú

2 Listen and check the correct pinyin.

- 1 Jīntiān shì hào
今天是二十七号。
 èershíqī èershíjī èershíxī
- 2 Tā hěn xióngmāo
她很喜欢熊猫。
 qǐhuan jǐhuan xǐhuan
- 3 Jiějie zài gōngzuò
姐姐在北京工作。
 Běiqīng Běijīng Běixīng

1-60

3 Say the sentences aloud.

- 1 Wǒ xìng Qí jiào Qí Jīn
我姓齐，叫齐金。
- 2 Jīntiān shì Qīyuè jiǔ hào Xīngqīyī
今天是七月九号，星期一。
- 3 Wǒ xiǎng qǐng jiějie chī xīcān
我想请姐姐吃西餐。

Now listen and repeat.

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	
10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	1	2	3	4	5				
10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	1	2	3	4	5	6			
10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9

4 Work in pairs. Use the calendar at the bottom of the left column to say the dates and days.

Student A: Choose five dates from the calendar and say them aloud.

Student B: Listen to the five dates and say the corresponding days.

A: Jiǔyuè bā hào B: Xīngqīsì

Now change roles.

5 Work in pairs. Ask about the birthdays of each other's family members or friends.

Nǐ bàba de shēngrì shì jǐ yuè jǐ hào
你爸爸的生日是几月几号？

people	shēngrì 生日	people	shēngrì 生日
bàba 爸爸	_____	dìdi 弟弟	_____
māma 妈妈	_____	_____	_____
jiějie 姐姐	_____	_____	_____

CHINESE TO GO

1-62 Making and accepting invitations

Jīntiān shì wǒ de shēngrì¹
今天是我的生日。Today is my birthday.

Shēngrì kuàilè

生日快乐！

Happy birthday!

Wǎnshàng wǒ qǐng nǐ chī Zhōngcān zěnmeyàng²
晚上我请你吃中餐，怎么样？

How about I invite you for a Chinese meal this evening?

Tài hǎo le Xièxie nǐ³
太好了！谢谢你。That's great! Thank you.

Bù kèqi

不客气。

You're welcome.

LESSON | 2

Reading and writing

1 Match the pictures with the words.



1 shàngbān 上班



2 jiànmiàn 见面



3 pàidui 派对



4 kàn shū 看书

生词 New words

Liùyuè 六月	June	dǎ 打	play (ball game with hands)
rì 日	date (written)	gēn 跟	with
Xīngqīrì 星期日	Sunday	jiànmiàn 见面	meet up
Xīngqīyī 星期一	Monday	kàn 看	read, see
Xīngqī'ér 星期二	Tuesday	shū 书	book
Xīngqīsān 星期三	Wednesday	shàngbān 上班	go to work
Xīngqīsì 星期四	Thursday	xué 学	study, learn
Xīngqīwǔ 星期五	Friday	pàidui 派对	party
Xīngqīliù 星期六	Saturday		

		Liùyuè sān rì jiǔ rì 六月 三日—九日						
		Xīngqīrì 星期日	Xīngqīyī 星期一	Xīngqī'ér 星期二	Xīngqīsān 星期三	Xīngqīsì 星期四	Xīngqīwǔ 星期五	Xīngqīliù 星期六
9:00		dǎ lánqiú 打篮球	kàn shū 看书		qu yīyuàn 去医院	gēn lǎoshī 跟老师		gēn Mǎkè 跟马克
12:00					jiànmiàn 见面			jiànmiàn 见面
12:00				xué 学		xué 学		
3:00				Zhōngwén 中文		Zhōngwén 中文		
3:00			shàngbān 上班		kàn shū 看书	shàngbān 上班		qu Wáng Yù 去王玉
6:00		gēn Wáng Yù 跟王玉		gēn Mǎkè 跟马克				de xīn jiā 的新家
6:00		de gēge 的哥哥		qu chī 去吃				Shǐdifū 史蒂夫
9:00		jiànmiàn 见面		Zhōngcān 中餐				de shēngrì 的生日
								pàidui 派对

2 Read Anna's weekly planner and answer the questions.

Ānnà Xīngqījǐ shàngbān
1 安娜星期几 上班?

Ānnà Xīngqījǐ gēn Mǎkè qù
2 安娜星期几 跟马克去

chī Zhōngcān
吃 中餐?

Ānnà Xīngqījǐ gēn lǎoshī
3 安娜星期几 跟老师

jiànmiàn
见面?

Shǐdifū Xīngqījǐ shēngrì
4 史蒂夫 星期几 生日?



Language in use

Months and dates

- 3** Write your own weekly planner. Use the words below to help you.

zuò qǐng chī kàn qù xué dǎ
做、请、吃、看、去、学、打

- 1** Look at the months and dates.

Number	月	Day			号	Date
		Number	十	Number		
yī	yuè			jiǔ	hào	9 January
一	月			九	号	
èr	yuè		shí	sì	hào	14 February
二	月		十	四	号	
wǔ	yuè	èr	shí	sān	hào	23 May
五	月	二	十	三	号	
liù	yuè	sān	shí		hào	30 June
六	月	三	十		号	

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 Chinese months and dates are all different, sharing no common characters.
- 2 Chinese months are formed by adding the character for "month" after the characters for 1 to 12.
- 3 Chinese dates are formed by adding the character for "date" after the characters for 1 to 31.
- 4 In Chinese, the days come before the months.

- 2** Write the dates in Chinese.

- | | |
|-------------|---------------|
| 1 4 March | 4 1 October |
| 2 6 April | 5 7 November |
| 3 22 August | 6 31 December |

► Turn to page 166 for more information.

Now work in pairs. Ask and say what you are going to do and when.

A: 你 星期一 做 什么?
Nǐ Xīngqīyī zuò shénme

B: 我 星期一 去 医院。
Wǒ Xīngqīyī qù yīyuàn



Sentences without verbs

1 Look at the sentences.

Subject	Predicate
Jīntiān 今天 Today is Saturday.	Xīngqīliù 星期六。 Xīngqīliù
Mǎkè 马克 Mark is 19 years old.	shíjiǔ suì 十九岁。 shíjiǔ suì
Wǒ 我 I'm very happy.	hěn gāoxìng 很 高兴。 hěn gāoxìng

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 In the sentences above, all the predicates are nouns, or noun/adjective phrases.
- 2 Chinese sentences must always have a verb.
- 3 Verbs are not necessary for sentences stating age, dates, days of the week and time, etc.

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- Xīngqīsì jīntiān
1 星期四 / 今天 /。
- Shí èryuè èershíwǔ hào jīntiān
2 十二月 / 二十五号 / 今天 /。
- èershí suì Wáng Yù
3 二十岁 / 王玉 /。

Making invitations using **qǐng** 请

1 Underline the two verbs in each sentence.

Wǒmen qǐng tā chī Zhōngcān

1 我们 请 她 吃 中餐。

Mǎkè qǐng wǒ qù tā jiā

2 马克 请 我 去 他 家。

Shǐdàfū qǐng Ānnà qù tā de shēngrì pàidì

3 史蒂夫 请 安娜 去 他 的 生日 派对。

Now complete the table with the appropriate parts of the sentences.

Person making invitation	Person receiving invitation	Event/Activity
1		
2	qǐng 请	
3		

2 Write the sentences in Chinese.

- 1 I invited her to have a meal.
- 2 Yeong-min invited us to his home.
- 3 Steve invited Wang Yu to his birthday party.

Turn to page 167 for grammar reference.

Turn to page 166 for grammar reference.

LESSON | 3

Communication activity

1 Work in two groups.

Group A: Find out about the dates of holidays in mainland China.

Group B: Find out about the dates of holidays in Hong Kong.

2 Tell the other group about the dates of holidays from your research and make notes.

► Turn to pages 152 and 158 for more speaking practice.

Use the following words to help you.

Yuándàn 元旦	New Year's Day	Zhōngqiūjié 中秋节	Mid-Autumn Festival
Chūnjié 春节	Spring Festival	Chóngyángjié 重阳节	Double Ninth Festival
Qīngmíngjié 清明节	Tomb Sweeping Festival	Fódànrì 佛诞日	Buddha's Birthday
Láodòngjié 劳动节	Labour Day	Shèngdànjié 圣诞节	Christmas
Duānwǔjié 端午节	Dragon Boat Festival	Fùhuójié 复活节	Easter
Guóqìngjié 国庆节	National Day		

Zhōngguó dàlù
中国 大陆 mainland China

jiérì 节日 Holidays	rìqī 日期 Dates
1	
2	
3	

Xiānggǎng
香港 Hong Kong

jiérì 节日 Holidays	rìqī 日期 Dates
1	
2	
3	

Cultural Corner

Lucky numbers in China

In Chinese culture, certain numbers are considered lucky (吉利) or unlucky (不吉利), based on the Chinese words which the pronunciations are similar to. For example, the number 9 (九) sounds like the word “long-lasting” (久), and is therefore considered a lucky number. The number 4 (四), on the contrary is considered an unlucky number because it sounds like the word “death” (死). In Chinese culture, the use of lucky numbers can be found everywhere: monetary gifts, phone numbers, street addresses, residence floors, vehicle licence plate numbers, and so on. The number 8 is the most frequently used lucky number, as it sounds similar to a word meaning “prosperity” or “wealth” (发).

Character writing

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
月	moon	月、期
扌	hand	打、握

- 1 Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

朋 找 护 服

- 2 Match the words with the meanings.

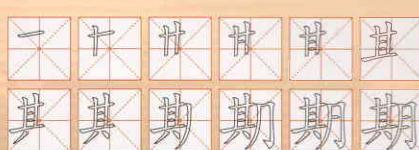
1 星期	a nurse
2 月	b make a phone call
3 打 电话	c week
4 护士	d month

- 3 Trace the characters in the boxes.

月



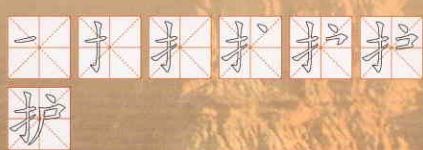
期



打



护



Review and practice

- 1 Circle the odd word out.

shēngrì	jiǔ hào	jīntiān	Xīngqīrì
1 生日	九号	今天	星期日
rì	yuè	xīngqī	hàomǎ
2 日	月	星期	号码
chī	qù	kàn	jǐ
3 吃	去	看	几
pàidì	yīyuàn	dàxué	jiā
4 派对	医院	大学	家

- 2 Match the words with the days in English.

Xīngqīliù	
1 星期六	a Thursday
Xīngqīrì	
2 星期日	b Friday
Xīngqī èr	
3 星期二	c Sunday
Xīngqīwǔ	
4 星期五	d Tuesday
Xīngqīsì	
5 星期四	e Saturday

- 3 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

Xīngqīrì 星期日 jīntiān 今天 chī 吃 qù 去

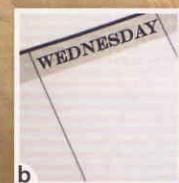
1 _____ 七月十号。

2 今天十一月二日，_____。

3 Lǎoshī qǐng wǒ tā jiā 老师请我_____她家。

4 Ānnà qǐng Shídīfū hé Mǎkè Zhōngcān 安娜请史蒂夫和马克_____中餐。

- 4 Look at the pictures and write full sentences to describe the dates and days.



Vocabulary extension

Look at the ways to say days and dates.

qùnián	jīnnián	míngnián
去年	今年	明年
zuótīān	jīntīān	míngtīān
昨天	今天	明天
shàngge yuè	zhège yuè	xiàge yuè
上个 月	这个 月	下个 月
shàngge xīngqī	zhège xīngqī	xiàge xīngqī
上个 星期	这个 星期	下个 星期

Now complete the sentences.

1 wǒ jiǔsuì jīnnián wǒ shísuì
我九岁，今年我十岁，
wǒ shíyī suì
我十一岁。

Zuótīān Xīngqīliù Xīngqīrì
2 昨天 星期六， 星期日，
Xīngqīyī
星期一。

Shàngge yuè shì Liùyuè shì Qīyuè
3 上个 月 是六月， 是七月，
shì Bāyuè
是 八月。

Vocabulary list

二月	Èryuè	n.	February	星期三	Xīngqīsān	n.	Wednesday
月	yuè	n.	month	星期四	Xīngqīsì	n.	Thursday
生日	shēngrì	n.	birthday	星期五	Xīngqīwǔ	n.	Friday
真的	zhēn de		really	星期六	Xīngqīliù	n.	Saturday
今天	jīntīān	n.	today	打	dǎ	v.	play (ball game with hands)
几	jǐ	pron.	how many	跟	gēn	prep.	with
星期天	Xīngqītiān	n.	Sunday (spoken)	见面	jiànmiàn	v.	meet up
星期	xīngqī	n.	week	看	kàn	v.	read, see
我们	wǒmen	pron.	we, us	书	shū	n.	book
吃饭	chīfàn	v.	have a meal	上班	shàngbān	v.	go to work
吃	chī	v.	eat	学	xué	v.	study, learn
去	qù	v.	go	派对	pàiduì	n.	party
厨房	chúfáng	n.	kitchen	一月	Yīyuè	n.	January
怎么样	zěnmeyàng	pron.	how about	五月	Wǔyuè	n.	May
那里	nàli	pron.	there	七月	Qīyuè	n.	July
中餐	Zhōngcān	n.	Chinese food	九月	Jiǔyuè	n.	September
餐	cān	n.	cuisine, meal	去年	qùnián	n.	last year
好吃	hăochī	adj.	tasty	今年	jīnnián	n.	this year
没问题	méi wèntí		no problem	明年	míngnián	n.	next year
六月	Liùyuè	n.	June	昨天	zuótīān	n.	yesterday
日	rì	n.	date (written)	明天	míngtīān	n.	tomorrow
星期日	Xīngqīrì	n.	Sunday (written)	上个	shàngge		last
星期一	Xīngqīyī	n.	Monday	这个	zhège	pron.	this
星期二	Xīngqī'èr	n.	Tuesday	下个	xiàge		next

A high-angle photograph of a busy street in China, likely Beijing, showing a dense crowd of people riding bicycles. The scene is filled with various individuals, including men in suits and women in casual attire, all navigating through the crowded bike traffic.

UNIT

7

Bā diǎn jiàn
八点见!

See you at eight!

LESSON | 1

4 Listen to the conversation.

Steve and Wang Yu are making plans for the weekend.

Shǐdīfū Wáng Yù zhège zhōumò nǐ yǒu
史蒂夫：王玉，这个周末你有

shíjiān ma
时间吗？

Wáng Yù Xīngqītiān wǒ yào qù kàn yéye
王玉：星期天我要去看爷爷。

Shǐdīfū Xīngqīliù nǐ yǒu shénme jīhuà
史蒂夫：星期六你有什么计划？

Wáng Yù Méiyǒu
王玉：没有。

Shǐdīfū Wǒmen yīqǐ qù kàn diànyǐng
史蒂夫：我们一起去看电影，
hǎo ma
好吗？

Wáng Yù Kàn shénme diànyǐng
王玉：看什么电影？

1 Match the watches with the times.



a



b



c



d

1 八点 2 四点 3 十一点 4 六点

Now listen and say the times.

2 Number the times in the order you hear them.

10:30

7:15

a 十点半

b 七点十五分

3:15

12:45

c 三点一刻

d 十二点四十五分

3 Write the times in numbers or characters.

：

：

a 九点二十五分 b 七点五十九分

8:15

11:30

c _____

d _____



LESSON 1

Shǐdīfū Zhōngguó diànyǐng Diànyǐng de míngzì
史蒂夫：中国 电影。电影的名字

jìào Jiā
叫《家》。

Wáng Yù Hǎo Jǐ diǎn
王玉：好。几点？

Shǐdīfū Diànyǐng bā diǎn bàn kāishǐ wǒmen
史蒂夫：电影八点半开始，我们
bā diǎn zài diànyǐngyuàn ménkǒu jiàn
八点在电影院门口见，
zěnmeyàng
怎么样？

Wáng Yù Tàihǎole Wǒ qǐng wǒ de péngyou
王玉：太好了。我请我的朋友
yìqǐ qù kěyǐ ma
一起去，可以吗？

Shǐdīfū Méi wèntí Míngtiān wǎnshàng bā diǎn jiàn
史蒂夫：没问题。明天 晚上 八点见！



生词 New words

zhège	this	diǎn	点
zhōumò	weekend	bàn	半
yǒu	have	kāishǐ	开始
shíjiān	time	diànyǐngyuàn	电影院
yào	want	ménkǒu	门口
yéye	grandfather	jiàn	见
jíhuà	plan	tài	太
méiyǒu	not have	le	了
yìqǐ	together	péngyou	朋友
diànyǐng	movie, film	míngtiān	明天
jǐ diǎn	what time	wǎnshàng	晚上



5 Listen again and answer the questions.

Wáng Yù Xīngqīliù zuò shénme

1 王玉星期六做什么？

Wáng Yù nǎ tiān qù kàn yéye

2 王玉哪天去看爷爷？

Shǐdīfū hé Wáng Yù kàn shénme diànyǐng

3 史蒂夫和王玉看什么电影？

Shǐdīfū hé Wáng Yù zài nǎlǐ jiànmiàn

4 史蒂夫和王玉在哪里见面？

6 Work in pairs. Act out the conversation in Activity 4 using the days and times below.

Xīngqīyī
星期一 10:15

Xīngqīsān
星期三 8:30

Xīngqīsì
星期四 8:15

Xīngqīwǔ
星期五 9:30

Pronunciation and speaking

Difference between "u" and "ü"

1 Listen and check the sounds you hear.

	u	ü
1 去	a <input type="checkbox"/>	b <input type="checkbox"/>
2 女	a <input type="checkbox"/>	b <input type="checkbox"/>
3 不	a <input type="checkbox"/>	b <input type="checkbox"/>
4 住	a <input type="checkbox"/>	b <input type="checkbox"/>
5 语	a <input type="checkbox"/>	b <input type="checkbox"/>
6 书	a <input type="checkbox"/>	b <input type="checkbox"/>

Now listen again and mark the tones for the words.

2 Read the sentences aloud.

Wǒ gēn Wáng Yù xué Yīngyǔ

1 我跟王玉学英语。

Yú lǎoshī qù túshūguǎn jiè shū

2 于老师去图书馆借书。

Now listen and repeat.

3 Listen and say the words.

1 几点	jǐ diǎn	今天	jīntiān	明天	míngtiān
2 一起	yìqǐ	可以	kěyǐ	怎么样	zěnmeyàng
3 电影	diànyǐng	朋友	péngyou	门口	ménkǒu

CHINESE TO GO

Confirming appointments

Míngtiān wǎnshàng bā diǎn jiàn
明天 晚上 八点见!

See you at eight tomorrow evening.

Yíyán-wéidìng
一言为定。 That's settled.

Bùjiàn-bùsàn
不见不散! Be there or be square!

2-5

4 Work in pairs. Put the sentences in the correct order to make a conversation.

Méi wèntí zài nǎlǐ jiàn

a 没问题，在哪里见?

Duìbuqǐ jīntiān wǎnshàng wǒ yào gōngzuò

b 对不起，今天晚上我要工作。

Míngtiān jiàn

c 明天见!

Kěyǐ Jǐ diǎn

d 可以! 几点?

Jīntiān wǎnshàng wǒmen yìqǐ qù kàn

e 今天晚上我们一起去看

diànyǐng zěnmeyàng

f 电影，怎么样?

Míngtiān wǎnshàng ne

g 明天晚上呢?

Diànyǐngyuàn ménkǒu

h 电影院门口。

Bā diǎn zěnmeyàng

i 好! 明天晚上八点见!

Now act out the conversation.

5 Work in pairs. Make plans to see a movie.



Student A: Invite Student B to the cinema.

Student B: Say you are busy. Suggest another day and time.

Student A: Agree to Student B's suggestions. Suggest somewhere to meet him/her before the movie.

LESSON | 2

Reading and writing

1 Match the pictures with the words.



1 pǎobù 2 chànggē 3 chīfàn 4 xué Yīngyǔ
1 跑步 2 唱歌 3 吃饭 4 学 英语

生词 New words

shì	thing, matter	chànggē	sing a song
shàngwǔ	morning	nǎinai	grandmother
fēn	minute	dào	get to (a place), arrive
kè	quarter (of an hour)	yùndòng	sports
Yīngyǔ	English	wǎnfàn	dinner
zhōngwǔ	noon	yīnyuè	music
cài	food, dish	tīng	listen
xiàwǔ	afternoon	yīnyuèhuì	concert
pǎobù	jog	shēngrìkǎ	birthday card
xiě	write	bókè	blog
diànzǐ yóují	电子邮件		

2 Read Wang Yu's weekend planner.



zhōumò jìhuà bù Xīngqīliù
周末 计划 簿 星期六

Weekend planner

Xīngqīrì
星期日

yào zuò
要做

de shì
的事

bèiwànglù
备忘录

shàngwǔ	xué	Yīngyǔ
上午	8:45	学 英语
zhōngwǔ	gēn	péngyou chī Rìběncài
中午	12:30	跟 朋友 吃 日本菜
xiàwǔ	gēn	gēge pǎobù
下午	3:15	跟 哥哥 跑步
wǎnshang	gēn	Shídīfū kàn diànyǐng
晚上	8:00	跟 史蒂夫 看 电影,
		在 电影院 门口 见
gěi Mākè	xiě	diànzǐ yóují
给 马克	写	电子邮件

yào zuò
要做

de shì
的事

bèiwànglù
备忘录

shàngwǔ	xué	chànggē
上午	10:15	学 唱歌
zhōngwǔ	kàn	yéye nǎinai
中午	12:00	看 爷爷 奶奶
xiàwǔ	dào	dàxué zuò yùndòng
下午	4:45	到 大学 做 运动
wǎnshang	zài	jiā chī wǎnfàn
晚上	6:00	在 家 吃 晚饭
	xué	Yīngyǔ
	8:00	学 英语
qǐng	yīnyuè	lǎoshī qù tīng yīnyuèhuì
给	音乐	老师 去 听 音乐会;
gěi Mākè	xiě	shēngrìkǎ xiě bókè
给 马克	写	生日卡; 写 博客

3 Answer the questions.

Wáng Yù Xīngqīliù shàngwǔ zuò shénme?

1 王玉星期六 上午 做 什么?

Wáng Yù Xīngqīliù wǎnshang qù nǎli

2 王玉星期六 晚上 去 哪里?

Wáng Yù Xīngqītiān xiàwǔ zuò shénme?

3 王玉星期天下午 做 什么?

Wáng Yù zài nǎli zuò yùndòng

4 王玉在 哪里 做 运动?

Wáng Yù nǎ tiān xiě bókè

5 王玉哪天 写 博客?

4 Write a weekend planner for yourself.

5 Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about your weekend schedules in Activity 4.

Nǐ Xīngqīliù yǒu shénme jíhuà?
你 星期六 有 什么 计划?

Nǐ zhōumò qù kàn diànyǐng ma?
你 周末 去看 电影 吗?

Zhège Xīngqītiān nǐ yào qù nǎli?
这个 星期天 你要 去 哪里?

Language in use

Adverbial expressions of time

1 Look at the sentences.

Xīngqīliù 星期六	wǒ 我	bù gōngzuò 不 工作。
Wǒ 我	Xīngqīliù 星期六	bù gōngzuò 不 工作。

I don't work on Saturdays.

Míngtiān 明天	Ānnà hé wǒ 安娜 和 我	qù kàn diànyǐng 去 看 电影。
Ānnà hé wǒ 安娜 和 我	míngtiān 明天	qù kàn diànyǐng 去 看 电影。

Tomorrow, Anna and I will go to see a movie.

Jīntiān wǎnshang 今天 晚上	wǒ 我	xué Yīngyǔ 学 英语。
Wǒ 我	jīntiān wǎnshang 今天 晚上	xué Yīngyǔ 学 英语。

I will study English tonight.

Now check the two correct explanations.

Adverbial expressions of time ...

1 can go before or after the subject.

2 can go at the end of the sentence.

3 do not need prepositions.

2 Put the words in brackets in the correct places in the sentences.

Wáng Yù qù chī Zhōngcān míngtiān
1 王玉去吃 中餐。(明天)

Ānnà hé wǒ yīqǐ qù kàn diànyǐng
2 安娜和我一起去看 电影。

Xīngqīliù wǎnshang
(星期六 晚上)

Wǒ qù tīng yīnyuèhui míngtiān xiàwǔ sì diǎn
3 我去听 音乐会。(明天 下午 四点)

Turn to page 167 for grammar reference.

Different ways of telling the time

Expressing future tense with

yào
要

1 Look at the different ways of telling the time.

8:00	8:10
bā diǎn 八点	bā diǎn shí fēn 八点十分
8:15	8:30
bā diǎn shíwǔ fēn 八点十五分	bā diǎn sānshí fēn 八点三十分
bā diǎn yī kè 八点一刻	bā diǎn bàn 八点半
8:45	
bā diǎn sìshíwǔ fēn 八点四十五分	bā diǎn sān kè 八点三刻
8:50	9:00
bā diǎn wǔshí fēn 八点五十分	jiǔ diǎn 九点

Now write two ways of telling each of these times.



2 Work in pairs. Use the appointment cards to act out the conversation.



Nǐ jǐ yuè jǐ hào qù kàn yīshēng
你几月几号去看医生?

Jǐ diǎn
几点?

1 Look at the sentences.

Adverbial (Time)	Subject	Adverbial (Time)	Predicate		
			Modal verb	Verb	Complement / Object
Jīntiān 今天	wǒ 我		yào 要	qù 去	yīyuàn 医院。
	wǒ 我	Xīngqīsān 星期三	yào 要	xué 学	chànggē 唱歌。
Míngtiān 明天	bàba 爸爸		yào 要	qù 去	Běijīng 北京。
	māma 妈妈	wǎnshàng 晚上	yào 要	gōngzuò 工作。	

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 要 in these sentences means "want to" or "be going to".
- 2 要 is used before another verb.
- 3 要 indicates an action in the past.

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1 kàn diànyǐng jiějie míngtiān yào
看 电影 / 姐姐 / 明天 / 要。

2 wǒ Xīngqīliù qù Shànghǎi yào
我 / 星期六 / 去 上海 / 要。

3 jīntiān wǎnshàng xué Zhōngwén Mǎkè yào
今天 晚上 / 学 中文 / 马克 / 要。

Turn to page 167 for grammar reference.

Turn to page 167 for grammar reference.

LESSON | 3

Communication activity

1 Work in groups.

You work in different regional offices of a marketing agency. You need to schedule a one-hour teleconference call with your colleagues, who all work in the same time zone as you.

First make a weekly schedule.

Xīngqīrì 星期日	Xīngqīyī 星期一	Xīngqī' èr 星期二	Xīngqīsān 星期三	Xīngqīsì 星期四	Xīngqīwǔ 星期五	Xīngqīliù 星期六
			1	2	3	4
5	6	7	8	9	10	11

Now talk to each other and find a time that works for all of you. You need to:

- suggest times when you are available.
- give reasons if the time is not good for you.

A: Zhège Xīngqī _____ nǐ yǒu shíjiān ma 你有时间吗?

B: Xīngqī _____ wǒ yào 我要 _____。

A: Xīngqī _____ ne 呢?

B: Kěyǐ Jǐ diǎn 可以。几点?

A: _____ diǎn zěnmeyàng 点 怎么样?

B: Méi wèntí 没问题。

2 Work with another group. Discuss and find a time that works for all of you.

Cultural Corner

Too late or too early?

The Chinese concept of time tends to be flexible. Chinese people do not adhere to timetables in a strict, sequential manner. Being on time is not very important and being late is not usually punished.

If someone of a very high position or rank is to attend a party, an unspoken rule of Chinese culture says they should be among the last to arrive as well as being among the first to leave.



► Turn to pages 153 and 159 for more speaking practice.

Character writing

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
门	gate	门、问
足	foot	跑、跟

1 Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

闲 路 闭 跳

2 Match the words with the meanings.

- | | |
|------------------|------------|
| wèntí
1 问题 | a jog |
| fángjiān
2 房间 | b with |
| gēn
3 跟 | c room |
| pǎobù
4 跑步 | d question |

3 Trace the characters in the boxes.

问 问 问 问 问 问

间 间 间 间 间 间

跟 跟 跟 跟 跟 跟

跑 跑 跑 跑 跑 跑

Review and practice

1 Circle the odd word out.

- | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|------------|-----------------------|-------------|-------------|----------|-----------|----------------|------------------|-----------|--------------|
| 1 zhōngwǔ
中午 | 2 chīfàn
吃饭 | 3 kàn
看 | 4 kàn diànyǐng
看电影 | jìhuà
计划 | pǎobù
跑步 | fàn
饭 | tīng
听 | wǎnshàng
晚上 | dǎ lánqiú
打篮球 | tíng
听 | kāishǐ
开始 |
|-----------------|----------------|------------|-----------------------|-------------|-------------|----------|-----------|----------------|------------------|-----------|--------------|

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1 我 / 吃 / 中餐 / 一起 / 跟 / 王玉。
jǐdiǎn nǐ xué chànggē yào míngtiān
2 几点 / 你 / 学 唱歌 / 要 / 明天 / ?
qù wǒ pǎobù bā diǎn
3 去 / 我 / 跑步 / 八点。
wǒ wǎnshàng tīng yīnyuèhuì qù
4 我 / 晚上 / 听 音乐会 / 去 / 。

3 Write the times in characters.

- 1 3:30 3 15:45 5 23:50
2 7:55 4 19:48 6 13:00

4 Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

bā diǎn bàn jǐ diǎn
八点半 几点
kàn diànyǐng gēn
看 电影 跟

Míngtiān nǐ yào zuò shénme

A: 明天 你要做 什么?

B: 我 _____ 妈妈去 听 音乐会。你 呢?

A: 我 跟 史蒂夫去 _____。

B: 你们 明天 _____ 见?

A: 晚上 _____。

Now work in pairs. Act out the conversation.

Vocabulary extension

Look at the activities.



yóuyǒng
游泳



mǎi dōngxi
买东西



kàn diànshì
看电视



kàn bǐsài
看比赛

Now work in pairs. Ask about and say the activities you like and what time you usually do them.

Wǒ xǐhuan yóuyǒng

A: 我喜欢游泳。

Wǒ zǎoshang qī diǎn yóuyǒng
我早上七点游泳。

Nǐ ne
你呢?

Wǒ xǐhuan

B: 我喜欢……

Vocabulary list

这个	zhège	pron.	this	分	fēn	n.	minute
周末	zhōumò	n.	weekend	刻	kè	n.	quarter (of an hour)
有	yǒu	v.	have	英语	Yīngyǔ	n.	English
时间	shíjiān	n.	time	中午	zhōngwǔ	n.	noon
要	yào	v.	want	菜	cài	n.	food, dish
爷爷	yéye	n.	grandfather	下午	xiàwǔ	n.	afternoon
计划	jìhuà	n.	plan	跑步	pǎobù	v.	jog
没有	méiyǒu	v.	not have	写	xiě	v.	write
一起	yīqǐ	adv.	together	电子邮件	diànzǐ yóujìan	n.	email
电影	diànyǐng	n.	movie, film	唱歌	chànggē	v.	sing a song
几点	jǐ diǎn		what time	奶奶	nǎinai	n.	grandmother
点	diǎn	n.	o'clock	到	dào	v.	get to (a place), arrive
半	bàn	num.	half (an hour)	运动	yùndòng	n.	sports
开始	kāishǐ	v.	start	晚饭	wǎnfàn	n.	dinner
电影院	diànyǐngyuàn	n.	cinema	音乐	yīnyuè	n.	music
门口	ménkǒu	n.	entrance, doorway	听	tīng	v.	listen
见	jiàn	v.	see, meet	音乐会	yīnyuèhuì	n.	concert
太	tài	adv.	very, too	生日卡	shēngrìkǎ	n.	birthday card
了	le	particle		博客	bókè	n.	blog
朋友	péngyou	n.	friend	游泳	yóuyǒng	v.	swim
明天	míngtiān	n.	tomorrow	买	mǎi	v.	buy
晚上	wǎnshàng	n.	evening	东西	dōngxi	n.	thing
事	shì	n.	thing, matter	电视	diànshì	n.	television
上午	shàngwǔ	n.	morning	比赛	bǐsài	n.	competition, match

UNIT 8

Duōshao qián

多少钱?

How much is it?



4 Listen again and check the true statements.

Ānnà yào mǎi hóngsè de qúnzi
□ 1 安娜要买红色的裙子。

Ānnà xǐhuan lán sè
□ 2 安娜喜欢蓝色。

Ānnà mǎile yī tiáo hēisè de qúnzi
□ 3 安娜买了一条黑色的裙子。

Qúnzi de jiàqian shì qīshíjiǔ kuài
□ 4 裙子的价钱是七十九块。

Qúnzi de jiàqian bù guì
□ 5 裙子的价钱不贵。

5 Work in pairs. Act out the conversation in Activity 3. Use different colours, clothes items and prices.

Ānnà Bù tài hǎokàn
安娜：不太好看！

Shòuhuòyuán Shìshí zhè tiáo
售货员：试试这条。

Ānnà Zhè tiáo bùcuò Duōshao qián
安娜：这条不错。多少钱？

Shòuhuòyuán Èr bǎi qīshíjiǔ kuài
售货员：二百七十九块。

Ānnà Piányi yídiǎnr kěyǐ ma
安娜：便宜一点儿可以吗？

Shòuhuòyuán Duìbuqǐ zhège jiàqian shì zuì piányi de
售货员：对不起，这个价钱是最便宜的。

Ānnà Wáng Yù zhège jiàqian guì ma
安娜：王玉，这个价钱贵吗？

Wáng Yù Bù guì Mǎi zhè tiáo ba
王玉：不贵。买这条吧。

Ānnà Hǎo gěi nǐ qián
安娜：好，给你钱。

Shòuhuòyuán Xièxie
售货员：谢谢。

生词 New words

shòuhuòyuán	售货员	shop assistant	shì	试	try
mǎi	买	buy	bùcuò	不错	not bad
yīfu	衣服	clothes	qián	钱	money
tiáo	条	measure word	bǎi	百	hundred
qúnzi	裙子	skirt	kuài	块	currency unit of China (yuan)
lái	来	come	piányi	便宜	cheap
zhèbian	这边	this way	yídiǎnr	一点儿	a little
hóng	红	red	jiàqian	价钱	price
lán sè	蓝色	blue	guì	贵	expensive
hēisè	黑色	black	ba	吧	particle for making suggestions
hǎokàn	好看	good-looking			

Pronunciation and speaking

The tones of —

2-13

- 1 Look at the tone marks for —. How does the tone of — change?

yì tiān	yì nián
一 天	一 年
yì wǎn	yí kuài
一 晚	一 块

Now listen and say the words.

2-14

- 2 Listen and check the correct tones for —.

1 一种

a yīzhǒng b yìzhǒng

2 一起

a yìqǐ b yīqǐ

3 一双

a yìshuāng b yīshuāng

3-15

- 3 Listen and match the tones for —.

1 一件	a yī
2 一条	b yí
3 一个	c yǐ
4 一百	d yì

Now say the words aloud.

2-16

- 4 Listen and say the words.

1 买	lái	试试
2 便宜	bù guì	jiàqian
3 毛衣	kùzi	qúnzi

5 Work in pairs.

Student A: You are a customer in a clothes shop. You like a clothes item but it is too expensive.

Student B: You are a shop assistant. You agree to sell the item at a lower price.

Wǒ yào mǎi

A: 我 要 买.....

Qǐng lái zhèbian Zhè tiáo zěnmeyàng

B: 请 来 这 边。这 条 怎 么 样？

Bù cuò Duōshao qián

A: 不 错。多 少 钱？

kuài

B: 块。

Tài guì le piányi yídiǎnr

A: 太 贵 了，便 宜 一 点 儿，

zěnmeyàng

..... 怎 么 样？

Hǎo ba

B: 好 吧。

Gěi nǐ qián

A: 给 你 钱。

Xièxie

B: 谢 谢。

CHINESE TO GO

Talking about shopping

Dázhé ma

打 折 吗？

Any discount?

Suíbiàn kànkan

随 便 看 看。

Feel free to take a look.

LESSON 2

Reading and writing

1 Match the pictures with the words.



a



b



c



d

- 1 fúzhuāng shìchǎng
服装 市场

- 3 chāoshì
超市

- 2 gòuwù zhōngxīn
购物 中心

- 4 shūdiàn
书店

2 Read Steve's blog and answer the questions.

Shǐdīfū xǐhuan kàn shū ma

- 1 史蒂夫 喜欢 看书吗?

Shǐdīfū mǎide kùzi duōshao qián

- 2 史蒂夫 买的 裤子 多少 钱?

Tā shàngge yuè mǎile shénme

- 3 他 上个 月 买了 什么?

Xiǎoxiǎo shì shéi

- 4 小小 是 谁?



Qiyuē èr rì Xīngqīsī
Beijing Life 北京 生活
七月二日星期四

Zhè shì wǒ zuì xǐhuan de Běijīng shūdiàn Wǒ
这是我最喜欢的北京书店。我
xǐhuan kàn shū
喜欢看书!

分享 | 评论 (06) | 阅读 (315) | 固定链接 | 发表于15:36

Zhège fúzhuāng shìchǎng hěn yuǎn dànshì jiàqian
这个 服装 市场 很远, 但是 价钱
piányi Xīngqītiān wǒ mǎile yī tiáo kùzi
便宜。星期天 我 买了一条 裤子,
èrshí kuài hěn piányi Wǒ gěi gēge mǎile
二十块, 很便宜。我 给 哥哥 买了
tīxù tā xǐhuan hēisè hé báisè de tīxù
T恤, 他 喜欢 黑色 和 白色 的 T恤。

分享 | 评论 (16) | 阅读 (476) | 固定链接 | 发表于16:29



Zhè shì yǒumíng de gòuwù zhōngxīn Shàng-
这是有名的购物中心 “Village”。上
ge yuè wǒ zài zhèlǐ mǎile yī shuāng xié hé yī jiàn
个月 我 在 这里 买 了一 双 鞋 和 一 件
dàiyī Měi gè zhōumò zhèlì dōu yǒu hěn duō rén
大衣。每个周末 这里 都 有 很 多 人。

分享 | 评论 (37) | 阅读 (238) | 固定链接 | 发表于21:39



Zhè shì wǒ hé Xiǎoxiǎo Xiǎoxiǎo shì chāoshì de
这是我 和 小小。小小 是 超市 的
shòuhuòyuán Měi gè Xīngqītiān zǎoshang wǒ dōu zài
售货员。每个 星期天 早上 我 都 在
zhèlǐ mǎi dōngxi
这里 买 东西。

分享 | 评论 (11) | 阅读 (139) | 固定链接 | 发表于22:00

生词 New words

shūdiàn
书店 bookshop

yǒumíng
有名 famous

jiàn
件 item, piece

fúzhuāng shìchǎng
服装 市场 market

gòuwù zhōngxīn
购物中心 centre

dàiyī
大衣 coat

yuǎn
远 far away

shàngge
上个 last

měi
每 every, each

kùzi
裤子 trousers

zhèlǐ
这里 here

hěn duō
很多 a lot of

tīxù
T恤 T-shirt

shuāng
双 pair

chāoshì
超市 supermarket

báisè
白色 white

xié
鞋 shoes

dōngxi
东西 thing

3 Complete the sentences.

Shǐdīfū Běijīng de shūdiàn 史蒂夫 北京 的 书店。

1 史蒂夫 _____ 很远。

2 _____ 很远。
Tā gěi gēge mǎile hé
3 他给哥哥买了 _____ 和
de tīxù
_____ 的 T恤。

Měi gè zhōumò dōu yǒu hěn duō rén
4 每个周末 _____ 都有很多人。

Měi gè Xīngqītiān zǎoshàng tā dōu zài
5 每个星期天 早上 他都在
mǎi dōngxi
_____ 买东西。

4 Read the list of clothes that Wang Yu has bought, and answer the questions.

Jiǔyuè yī rì 九月一日	dàyī 大衣	¥ 500.00
Jiǔyuè wǔ rì 九月 五日	máoyī 毛衣	¥ 160.00
Shíyīyuè qī rì 十一月七日	qúnzi 裙子	¥ 120.00
Shíyīyuè shí rì 十一月十日	tīxù T恤	¥ 38.00
Shí'èryuè shí'èr rì 十二月十二日	kùzi 裤子	¥ 135.00

Wáng Yù mǎi de dàyī duōshao qián
1 王玉买的大衣多少钱?

Wáng Yù Jiǔyuè wǔ rì mǎile shénme
2 王玉九月五日买了什么?

Tā mǎide qúnzi duōshao qián
3 她买的裙子多少钱?

Wáng Yù Shí'èryuè shí'èr rì mǎile shénme
4 王玉十二月十二日买了什么?

5 Write a blog about your own life.

Language in use

Measure words

1 Look at the examples for using measure words.

gé 个	jiàn 件	tiáo 条	shuāng 双
rén 人 people	máoyī 毛衣 sweater	qúnzi 裙子 skirt	wàzi 袜子 socks
píngguǒ 苹果 apple	tīxù T恤 T-shirt	lù 路 road	yǎnjing 眼睛 eyes
xīngqī 星期 week	shì 事 thing	máojīn 毛巾 towel	shǒu 手 hands

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 个 is often used for clothing.
- 2 件 is usually used for people or objects.
- 3 条 is used for long and narrow objects.
- 4 双 is used for things that come in pairs.



2 Complete the phrases with the words in the box.

gè 只 shuāng 双 tiáo 条 jiàn 件

- | | | | |
|-----------|------------|-----------|----------|
| 1 一 _____ | 朋友 péngyou | 3 三 _____ | 大衣 dàiyī |
| 2 一 _____ | 裤子 kùzi | 4 一 _____ | 鞋 xié |

▶ Turn to page 168 for more information.

Numerals 二 / 两

1 Look at the phrases.

liǎng gè rén 两个人	èrshí'èr gè rén 二十二个人
liǎng suì 两岁	wǔshí'èr suì 五十二岁
liǎng tiān 两天	dì-èr tiān 第二天 the second day

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 两 is used for counting things.
- 2 二 can be used to mean second.
- 3 两 is used for expressing quantity.

2 Complete the phrases with 二 or 两.

- | | | | |
|--------------|---------------|----------------|---------------------|
| 1 _____ 件 衣服 | jiàn yīfu | 4 第 _____ 个人 | dì _____ gè rén |
| 2 _____ 十块 钱 | shí kuài qián | 5 _____ 双 鞋 | shuāng xié |
| 3 _____ 个月 | gè yuè | 6 十 _____ 个 星期 | shí _____ gè xīngqī |

▶ Turn to page 168 for more information.

Expressing past tense using

了

1 Look at the sentences.

Adverbial	Subject	Adverbial	Predicate		
			Verb	Particle	Object / Complement
Shàngge 上个	wǒ 我		mǎi 买	le 了	liǎng jiàn 两 件
Xīngqītiān 星期天					yīfú 衣服。
	Tā 他		qù 去	le 了	Běijīng 北京。
	wǒ 我	zài Měiguó 在 美国	zhù 住	le 了	sān nián 三年。

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 了 is used after a verb.
- 2 了 is used to indicate the completion of an action.
- 3 了 is always used before a number.

2 Write the sentences in Chinese.

- 1 He has studied Chinese for three years.
- 2 She bought a pair of black shoes.
- 3 They went to Shanghai.

▶ Turn to page 168 for grammar reference.

LESSON | 3

Communication activity

1 Work in groups.

You are going to set up a website for a designer clothing store, targeting Chinese customers. Think about the following:

- the selection of clothes that you will sell online
- the prices of similar clothes in your local shops
- the prices in RMB
- name, telephone number, email and website of your online store
- date you plan to launch the online store

2 Make notes and rough designs for the pages of your online store.

3 Present the pages of your store to another group.

► Turn to pages 153 and 159 for more speaking practice.

Cultural Corner

To bargain or not to bargain?

For westerners who are used to fixed prices, bargaining in China can be one of the hardest things to get used to. However, it is a good idea to bargain in China, as tourists are often offered an inflated price in markets, small shops, restaurants and sometimes even hotels.

Here are some bargaining tips if you are in China:

- Learn a few common Chinese phrases, such as “it’s too expensive” and “can you make it cheaper”?
- Take your time. Never buy anything at the first place you go to. Always shop around to compare prices.
- Decide how much you are willing to spend on an item before making an offer.
- If your offer is not accepted, try walking away. You will usually be called back for another round of negotiation if the shop is willing to sell.

Character writing

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
衤	clothes	裙
贝	shell	员

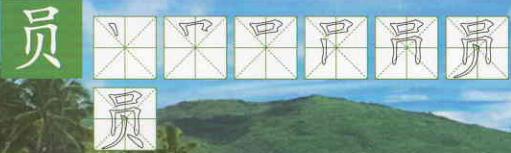
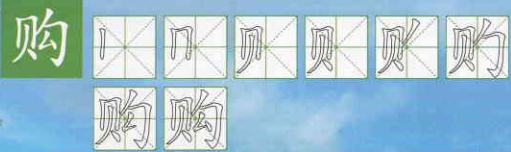
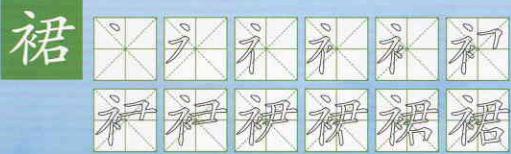
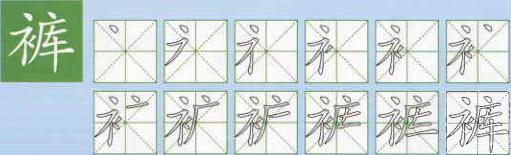
- 1 Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

衫 贵 衬 货

- 2 Match the words with the meanings.

kùzi 1 裤子	a skirt
qúnzi 2 裙子	b shopping
góuwù 3 购物	c shop assistant
shòuhuòyuán 4 售货员	d trousers

- 3 Trace the characters in the boxes.



Review and practice

- 1 Write questions about the underlined parts of the sentences.

Wǒ mǎi le yī jiàn hēi máoyī
1 我买了一件黑毛衣。

Ānnà qù le Běijīng
2 安娜去了北京。

Míngtiān shì Wáng Yù de shēngrì³
3 明天是王玉的生日。

Yǒngmǐn xǐhuān báisè
4 永民喜欢白色。

- 2 Complete the passage with 一 and 两.

Éryuè shí rì wǒ hé gè
二月 十 日，我和 个
péngyou mǎi le jiàn yīfú shuāngxié
朋友买了一件衣服，双鞋
hé shí zhāng shēngrìkǎ
和十 一 张生日卡。

- 3 Circle the odd word out.

1 红色	lán sè	hēisè	shūdiàn
2 毛衣	tīxù	xié	qúnzi
3 件	shuāng	hóng	tiáo
4 价钱	bùguì	kuài	piányi
5 买	gěi	shì	hǎokàn

- 4 Match the pictures with the words.



Vocabulary extension

Match the pictures with the words.



- | | | | |
|-----|---------|-----|-----------|
| 1 | wéijīn | 4 | chènshān |
| 围巾 | | 衬衫 | |
| 2 | duǎnkù | 5 | màozi |
| 短裤 | | 帽子 | |
| 3 | niúzǐkù | 6 | liányīqún |
| 牛仔裤 | | 连衣裙 | |

Vocabulary list

售货员	shòuhuòyuán	<i>n.</i>	shop assistant	裤子	kùzi	<i>n.</i>	trousers
买	mǎi	<i>v.</i>	buy	T恤	tīxù	<i>n.</i>	T-shirt
衣服	yīfu	<i>n.</i>	clothes	白色	báisè	<i>n.</i>	white
条	tiáo	<i>measure word</i>		有名	yōumíng	<i>adj.</i>	famous
裙子	qúnzi	<i>n.</i>	skirt	购物中心	gòuwù zhōngxīn	<i>n.</i>	shopping centre
来	lái	<i>v.</i>	come	上个	shàngge		last
这边	zhèbian	<i>pron.</i>	this way	这里	zhèli	<i>pron.</i>	here
红	hóng	<i>adj.</i>	red	双	shuāng	<i>measure word</i>	pair
蓝色	lánse	<i>n.</i>	blue	鞋	xié	<i>n.</i>	shoes
黑色	hēisè	<i>n.</i>	black	件	jiàn	<i>measure word</i>	item, piece
好看	hǎokàn	<i>adj.</i>	good-looking	大衣	dàyī	<i>n.</i>	coat
试	shì	<i>v.</i>	try	每	měi	<i>pron.</i>	every, each
不错	bùcuò	<i>adj.</i>	not bad	很多	hěn duō		a lot of
钱	qián	<i>n.</i>	money	超市	chāoshì	<i>n.</i>	supermarket
百	bǎi	<i>num.</i>	hundred	东西	dōngxi	<i>n.</i>	thing
块	kuài	<i>measure word</i>	currency unit of China (yuan)	绿色	lǜsè	<i>n.</i>	green
便宜	piányi	<i>adj.</i>	cheap	黄色	huángsè	<i>n.</i>	yellow
一点儿	yídiǎnr	<i>quantifier</i>	a little	毛衣	máo yī	<i>n.</i>	sweater
价钱	jiàqian	<i>n.</i>	price	围巾	wéijīn	<i>n.</i>	scarf
贵	guì	<i>adj.</i>	expensive	短裤	duǎnkù	<i>n.</i>	shorts
吧	ba	<i>particle</i>	(for making suggestions)	牛仔裤	niúzǐkù	<i>n.</i>	jeans
书店	shūdiàn	<i>n.</i>	bookshop	衬衫	chènshān	<i>n.</i>	shirt
服装市场	fúzhuāng shìchǎng	<i>n.</i>	clothes market	帽子	màozi	<i>n.</i>	hat
远	yuǎn	<i>adj.</i>	far away	连衣裙	liányīqún	<i>n.</i>	one-piece dress

Review 2

Vocabulary

1 Complete the words with the characters in the box.

huà 少 chī 服 jiān 动
话 少 吃 服 间 动

1 房 _____	3 运 _____	5 电 _____
2 衣 _____	4 好 _____	6 多 _____

2 Match the words with the meanings.

hàomǎ	a bookshop
dìzhǐ	b thing
diànyǐng	c address
shùdiàn	d apartment building
dōngxi	e number, code
gōngyù	f movie
6 公寓	

3 Complete the email with the words in the box.

ménkǒu 日 shēngrì diànyǐng
门口 日 生日 电影

未读邮件 ×

返回 回复 回复全部 转发 删除

Lǐ Lì

李丽:

Nǐ hǎo

你好!

Jiǔyuè shíbā zhège Xīngqīliù shì wǒ
九月十八_____, 这个星期六是我

的_____, 我们一起看_____, 怎么样?

Wǎnshàng qī diǎn Běijīngdiànyǐngyuàn
晚上 七点, 北京 电影院 ____

jiàn

见。

Zhāng Míng
张 明

Grammar

1 Listen and complete the activities on Mark's to-do list for the day.

gēn lǎoshī	Zhōngwén
<input type="checkbox"/> 1 跟 老师 _____	<input type="checkbox"/> 4 _____ 中文
<input type="checkbox"/> 2 跟 安娜 _____	<input type="checkbox"/> 5 _____ 运动
<input type="checkbox"/> 3 _____ 书	<input type="checkbox"/> 6 _____ 超市

Now listen again and check the things that he has already done.

2 Match the measure words with the nouns.

gé	jiàn	tiáo	shuāng
个	件	条	双
píngguǒ	dàiyī		
<input type="checkbox"/> 1 苹果	<input type="checkbox"/> 6 大衣		
lù	kùzi		
<input type="checkbox"/> 2 路	<input type="checkbox"/> 7 裤子		
qúnzi	xié		
<input type="checkbox"/> 3 裙子	<input type="checkbox"/> 8 鞋		
péngyou	shì		
<input type="checkbox"/> 4 朋友	<input type="checkbox"/> 9 事		
tīxù	xīngqī		
<input type="checkbox"/> 5 T恤	<input type="checkbox"/> 10 星期		

3 Write the times in numbers or characters. Write two ways of saying the time where appropriate.

qī diǎn èrshíwǔ fēn
1 七点二十五分

bā diǎn yī kè
2 八点一刻

jiǔ diǎn bàn
3 九点半

4 12:45

5 6:30

6 5:00

4 Circle the correct pinyin for —.

- 1 一 (yī / yāo) 本 shū
2 1 (yī / yāo) 78 号 fángjiān
3 一 (yī / yāo) 个 píngguǒ
4 电话 diànhuà 号码 hào shù 是 78563491 (yī / yāo)
5 一 (yī / yāo) 天 tiān
6 星期一 (yī / yāo)

5 Look at Xiaoxiao's notes on the calendar and answer the questions.



- 1 jiějie de shēngrì shì nǎ tiān?
2 Xiǎoxiǎo qǐng jiějie zuò shénme
3 Xiǎoxiǎo yào mǎi shénme

6 Complete the conversations with the words in the box.

jǐ	shuāng	èr	liǎng
fēn	nǎlǐ	ne	yě

- 1 A: Nǐ hǎo! qǐngwèn xiànzài jǐ diǎn?
B: _____ 点十五 _____.

Wǒ shì Yīngguórén nǐ shì rén?

2 A: 我是英国人，你是_____人？

B: 我_____是英国人。

Nǐ yǒu gè jiějie?

3 A: 我有一个姐姐，她有一大眼睛。
B: Wǒ yǒu yī gè jiějie tā yǒu yī dà yǎnjing

4 A: Nǐ de shēngrì shì jǐ yuè?

B: _____月。你的生日_____？
A: Yě shì Èryuè 也是二月。

Integrated skills

1 Listen and complete the passage.

Jīntiān shì wǒ hé māma yìqǐ
今天是_____, 我和妈妈一起
qù mǎi yīfu Wǒ mǎile Shàngge
去买衣服。我买了_____. 上个
Xīngqītiān bàba gěi wǒ mǎi le dàn
星期天爸爸给我买了_____, 但
shì wǒ xǐhuān Māma gěi bàba mǎi le
是我喜欢_____. 妈妈给爸爸买了
tā hěn xǐhuān
_____, 他很喜欢。

2 Listen and write the students' telephone numbers.

Běijīng Dàxué
北京大学

xuéshēng xìngmíng diànhuà hào shù
学生 姓名 电话 号码

Lǐ Bái
李白

Wáng Ān
王安

Liú Lì
刘丽

5 Complete the conversation using the sentences in the box.

- Běijīng diànyǐngyuàn ménkǒu
a 北京 电影院 门口。
Wǎnshàng qīdiǎn zěnmeyàng
b 晚上 七点，怎么样？
Qīyuè shí' èr hào
c 七月 十二号。
Wǒ qǐng nǐmen kàn diànyǐng zěnmeyàng
d 我请 你们 看 电影，怎么样？

A: 你知道 张 红 的 生日 是哪天 吗？

B: _____

Míngtiān Zhēn de ma

A: 明天？ 真 的 吗？

B: 是，我 给 她 买 了一 条 围 巾。你 呢？

Wǒ bù zhīdào

A: 我 不 知 道。_____

Tài hǎo le wǒmen míngtiān jǐ diǎn jiàn

B: 太 好 了，我 们 明 天 几 点 见？

A: _____

Hǎo zài nǎlǐ

B: 好，在 哪 里？

A: _____

Hǎo míngtiān wǎnshàng bùjiàn-bùsàn

B: 好，明 天 晚 上 不 见 不 散！

Enjoy Chinese

Guess what these ancient Chinese characters resemble.

1		shuǐ a 水
2		yáng b 羊
3		nǚ c 女
4		níú d 牛
5		mén e 门

Now match the ancient characters with the modern ones.

UNIT 9



Bù yuǎn
不远!

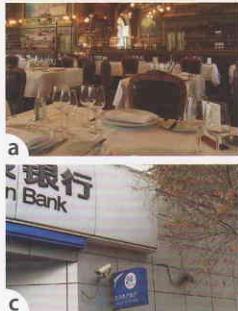
It's not far!

LESSON 1

Vocabulary and listening



1 Match the pictures with the words for places.



1 邮局 2 洗手间 3 饭馆 4 银行



Now listen and say the words.



2 Listen and complete the blanks with the words in the box.

dōngbian
东边

xībian
西边

nánbian
南边

běibian
1 北边

2 _____



4 _____

3 _____

生词 New words

nǎr	哪儿	lí	离	away from
lóu	楼	zhèr	这儿	here
zěnme	怎么	duì	对	right, correct
zǒu	走	yínháng	银行	bank
lùrén	路人	fùjìn	附近	vicinity, nearby
yóujú	邮局	qiánbian	前边	front
hòubian	后边	fēnzhōng	分钟	minute
wǎng	往	zuoyòu	左右	about
nánbian	南边	south		



3 Listen to the conversation.

Steve and Yeong-min are asking for directions to Anna's house.

Shídīfū 安娜住在哪儿?
史蒂夫：安娜住在哪儿？

Yǒngmín 公园路34号楼。
永民：公园路34号楼。

Shídīfū 怎么走?
史蒂夫：怎么走？

Yǒngmín 问问路人吧!
永民：问问路人吧！

.....

Yǒngmín 请问，这是公园路吗?
永民：请问，这是公园路吗？

Lùrén 不是。公园路在邮局的后边。
路人：不是。公园路在邮局的后边。

Yǒngmín 我们怎么走?
永民：我们怎么走？

Lùrén 往南边走。
路人：往南边走。



4 Listen again and check the correct answers.

Shídifū qù Ānnà jiā yào wǎng nābian zǒu
史蒂夫去安娜家，要往哪边走？

1 史蒂夫去安娜家，要往哪边走？

nánbian

a 南边

běibian

b 北边

Shídifū hé Yōngmín lí Ānnà jiā yuǎn bù yuǎn
史蒂夫和永民离安娜家远不远？

2 史蒂夫和永民离安娜家远不远？

yuǎn

a 远

bùyuǎn

b 不远

Gōngyuán Lù yǒu méiyǒu sānshísì hào lóu
公园路有没有34号楼？

3 公园路有没有34号楼？

yǒu

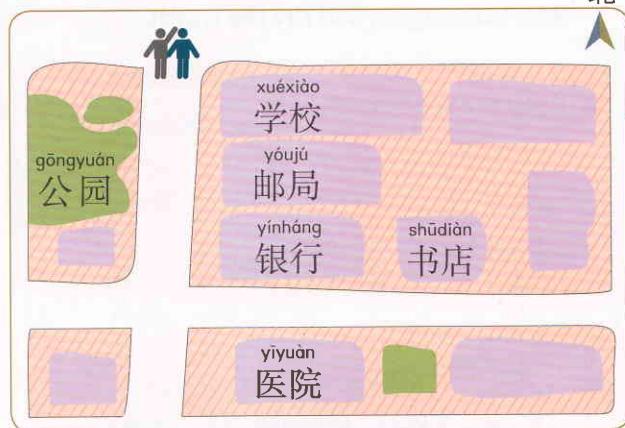
a 有

méiyǒu

b 没有

Now mark Anna's apartment with an "X" and write "Gōngyuán Lù" in the correct place.

běi
北



5 Listen and complete the sentences.

Fùjìn yínháng 银行。

1 附近 _____ 银行。

Yóujú zài shūdiàn de

2 邮局在书店的_____。

Yīyuàn lí zhèr

3 医院离这儿_____。

6 Work in groups. Act out the conversation in Activity 3 using the words here.

dàxué

大学

yīyuàn

医院

xuéxiào

学校

yínháng

银行

yóujú

邮局

shūdiàn

书店

Pronunciation and speaking

Retroflex "r"

1 Listen and check the words you hear.

- | | | |
|---|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1 | <input type="checkbox"/> a zhè | <input type="checkbox"/> b zhèr |
| 2 | <input type="checkbox"/> a nǎ | <input type="checkbox"/> b nǎr |
| 3 | <input type="checkbox"/> a yīdiǎn | <input type="checkbox"/> b yīdiǎnr |
| 4 | <input type="checkbox"/> a yī kuài | <input type="checkbox"/> b yīkuàir |

Now listen again and say the words.

2 Read the sentences aloud.

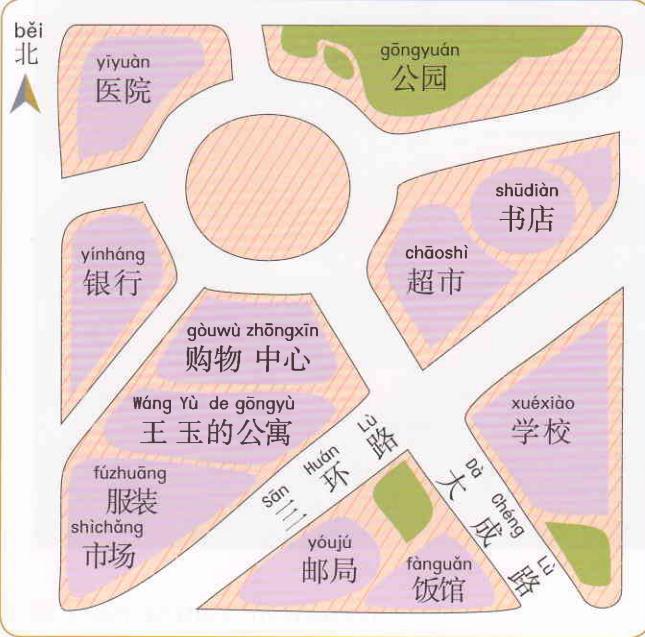
- 1 这儿有一个公园。
- 2 王玉住在哪儿？
- 3 超市有一点儿远。
- 4 我们一块儿看 电影，好吗？

Now listen and repeat.

3 Listen and say the words.

- | | | |
|------|----|----|
| 1 哪儿 | 这儿 | 怎么 |
| 2 南边 | 东边 | 西边 |
| 3 前边 | 后边 | 附近 |

4 Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about Wang Yu's neighbourhood. Use the prompts below to help you.



Nǐ hǎo Qǐngwèn zài nǎr?
你好！请问，……在哪儿？
lí zhèr yuǎn ma
……离这儿远吗？
shì bù shì zài
……是不是在……？

CHINESE TO GO

Asking and answering questions about places

Qǐngwèn fùjìn yǒu méiyǒu xǐshǒujīān
请问，附近有没有洗手间？
Excuse me, is there a toilet nearby?

Bùhǎoyìsi wǒ bù zhīdào
不好意思，我不知道。
Sorry, I don't know.

Yǒu yīzhí wǎng qián zǒu
有，一直往前走。
Yes, go straight ahead.

Yǒu zài zuǒbiān yòubìan
有，在左边 / 右边。
Yes, on the left/right.

LESSON 2

Reading and writing

1 Match the pictures with the words.



1 gōngyù 公寓



2 fángzi 房子

3 fángjiān 房间

4 sùshè 宿舍

6 房屋信息

100 房屋出租

1 gōngyù chūzū 公寓出租

Dàxué Lù shíbā hào èr lóu yǒu sān gè fángjiān
大学路 18 号 2 楼，有三个房间。

Fángzi lí dàxué hěn jìn Fángzi de dōngbian
房子离大学很近。房子的东边

yǒu xuésheng sùshè xībian yǒu dìtièzhàn
有学生宿舍，西边有地铁站，
běibian yǒu chāoshì fùjìn yǒu diànyǐngyuàn
北边有超市，附近有电影院。

Jiāotōng hé mǎi dōngxi dōu hěn fāngbiàn
交通和买东西都很方便。

měi yuè ￥4200 diànhuà 电话：25489076

Liánxirén Zhào xiǎojiě
联系人：赵小姐

2 gōngyù chūzū 公寓出租

Hěn piányi
很便宜！

Nánjing Lù jiǔshíbā hào bā lóu yībāi èrshí píngfāngmǐ
南京路 98 号 8 楼，120 平方米。

Fùjìn yǒu hěnduō shùdiàn hé jiàqian piányi
附近有很多书店和价钱便宜
de fànguǎn dōngbian yǒu gōngyuán xībian
的饭馆，东边有公园，西边
yǒu gòuwù zhōngxin
有购物中心。

měi yuè ￥3500 diànhuà 电话：69812047

Liánxirén Mǎ xiānsheng
联系人：马先生

生词 New words

chūzū 出租	rent out, lease	jiāotōng 交通	transportation
fángzi 房子	flat, house	fāngbiàn 方便	convenient
jìn 近	near	liánxì 联系	contact
dōngbian 东边	east	Nánjing 南京	Nanjing
sùshè 宿舍	dormitory	píngfāngmǐ 平方米	square metre
xībian 西边	west	fànguǎn 饭馆	restaurant
dìtièzhàn 地铁站	subway station	xiānsheng 先生	Mr
běibian 北边	north		





- 3 Work in pairs. Write notes about the two flats in Activity 2.

	gōngyù 公寓 1	gōngyù 公寓 2
fùjìn yǒu 附近有		
gòuwù 购物		
měi yuè 每月¥		

Now discuss which flat Mark should choose.

- 4 Match the sentences with the information in the box.

jiāotōng gòuwù yùndòng
a 交通 b 购物 c 运动

Fángzi de běibian yǒu chāoshì
1 房子的 北边 有 超市。

Fángzi lí dàxué hěn jìn
2 房子离 大学 很 近。

Fángzi de xībian yǒu gōngyuán
3 房子的 西边 有 公园。

Fángzi de dōngbian yǒu shūdiàn
4 房子的 东边 有 书店。

Fángzi de nánbian yǒu dìtiězhàn
5 房子的 南边 有 地铁站。

- 5 Write an advertisement describing your flat or house. Use the advertisements in Activity 2 to help you.

Wǒ jiā de dōngbian yǒu
我家的 东边 有……

Language in use

Expressing existence
using

yǒu
有

- 1 Look at the sentences.

Subject		Predicate	
Attribute	Location	Verb	Object / Noun phrase
Xuéxiào 学校	fùjìn 附近	yǒu 有	yī gè gōngyuán 一个 公园。
There is a park near the school.			
Yóujú de 邮局的	xībian 西边	méiyǒu 没有	dìtiězhàn 地铁站。
There isn't a subway station to the west of the post office.			
Wǒ jiā 我家	fùjìn 附近	yǒu 有	chāoshì 超市。
There is a supermarket near my home.			

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 有 means "there is/are".
 2 The noun before 有 can only refer to people.
 3 没有 means "there isn't/aren't".

- 2 Write the sentences in Chinese.

- 1 There is a bank near my home.
 2 There is a supermarket to the north of the subway station.
 3 There isn't a post office behind the cinema.

► Turn to page 168 for grammar reference.



Asking questions
using

yǒu méiyǒu
有 没 有

Expressing locations
with the verb

zài
在

1 Look at the conversations.

Fùjìn yǒu shūdiàn ma

A: 附近 有 书店 吗?

Yǒu

B: 有。

Fùjìn yǒu méiyǒu gōngyuán

A: 附近 有 没有 公园?

Yǒu

B: 有。

Qiánbian yǒu méiyǒu yínháng

A: 前边 有 没有 银行?

Méiyǒu

B: 没有。

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 有没有 is an alternative expression of 有……吗.
- 2 有没有 means “is there” or “isn’t there” in questions.
- 3 有没有 can be used in statements.

2 Rewrite the questions using 有没有.

Qiánbian yǒu dìtiězhàn ma

1 前边 有 地铁站 吗?

Chāoshì hòubian yǒu xǐshǒujīān ma

2 超市 后边 有 洗手间 吗?

Nǐ jiā fùjìn yǒu yínháng ma

3 你家 附近 有 银行 吗?

► Turn to page 169 for grammar reference.

1 Look at the sentences.

Subject	Verb	Noun phrase
Dìtiězhàn	zài	shūdiàn dōngbian 书店 东边。
Tā	zài	xuéxiào 学校。
Wáng Yù	zài	gōngyuán 公园。

Now check the sentences in which 在 is used as a verb.

Wǒ bàba zài yīyuàn gōngzuò
1 a 我爸爸 在 医院 工作。

Yóujú zài yīyuàn hòubian
□ b 邮局 在 医院 后边。

Xǐshǒujīān zài shūdiàn dōngbian
2 a 洗手间 在 书店 东边。

Mǎkè zài Wáng Yù jiā chīfàn
□ b 马克 在 王玉家 吃饭。

2 Look at the sentences.

Yóujú de běibian yǒu yī gè gōngyuán
邮局 的 北边 有一个 公园。

Gōngyuán zài yóujú běibian
公园 在 邮局 北边。

Now rewrite the sentences using 在.

Yínháng de hòubian yǒu yī gè chāoshì
1 银行 的 后边 有一个 超市。

Yóujú fùjìn yǒu yī gè diànyǐngyuàn
2 邮局 附近 有一个 电影院。

► Turn to page 169 for grammar reference.

LESSON | 3

Communication activity

1 Work in pairs. Prepare a proposal for funding to design a new town centre for a developing region in western China. Think about:

- locations of the bank, post office, bus station, subway station, supermarket, park, etc.
- distance between these places
- places to the north/south/east/west and how they connect to the town centre

2 Prepare questions to ask other pairs about their plans.

Běibian Nánbian Dōngbian Xībian yǒu shénme
北边 / 南边 / 东边 / 西边 有 什么?

Dìtiězhàn lí chāoshì yuǎn bù yuǎn
地铁站 离 超市 远 不远?

Yǒu méiyǒu gōngyuán
有 没有 公园?

Yínháng zài nǎlǐ zěnme qù
银行 在 哪里? 怎么 去?

3 Present your plan to the class. Answer questions from your classmates, and vote for the best plan.



Turn to pages 154 and 160 for more speaking practice.

Cultural Corner

How far is really far?

Just as in the West, Chinese people often prefer to gauge distance in terms of how long it takes to get somewhere, rather than describing it in terms of metres, kilometres or miles. If you were to ask “How far is it from Beijing to Shanghai?” in China, people would generally not answer “About 1000 kilometres”. Instead, they would say, “Two hours by plane” or “About ten hours by train”. Because long-distance train journeys are very common in China, more than in most other countries, describing distance in terms of hours spent on the train is widely and easily understood.

Character writing

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
木	tree	楼、机
彳	step	往、行

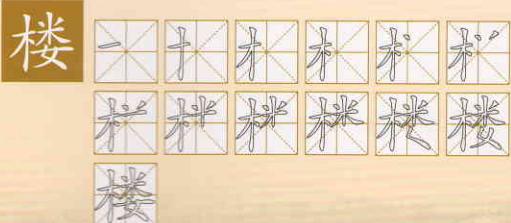
1 Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

样 很 林 德

2 Match the words with the meanings.

1 楼	a bank
2 手机	b towards
3 银行	c building
4 往	d mobile phone

3 Trace the characters in the boxes.



Review and practice

1 Circle the odd word out.

dōngbian	xībian	běibian	zhèli
1 东边	西边	北边	这里
chāoshì	fùjin	gōngyuán	yínháng

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1 有 / 银行 / 没有 / 附近 / ?
nánbian dìtiězhàn gōngyuán yī gè yǒu de
2 南边 / 地铁站 / 公园 / 一个 / 有 / 的 / 。
de yóujú yínháng běibian zài
3 的 / 邮局 / 银行 / 北边 / 在 / 。
chāoshì méiyǒu qiánbian
4 超市 / 没有 / 前边 / 。
yǒu yínháng méiyǒu fùjin

3 Match the questions with the answers.

- Chāoshì lí yīyuàn yuǎn ma
1 超市 离 医院 远 吗?
Yóujú zài nǎli
2 邮局 在 哪里?
Dàxué fùjin yǒu shūdiàn ma
3 大学 附近 有 书店 吗?
zhèli de jiāotōng fāngbiàn ma
4 这里的 交通 方便 吗?

Yǒu zài qiánbian

- a 有, 在 前边。
Fùjin yǒu dìtiězhàn hěn fāngbiàn
b 附近 有 地铁站, 很 方便。
Bù yuǎn
c 不 远。
Yóujú zài shūdiàn de běibian
d 邮局 在 书店 的 北边。

4 Write sentences with 在 and 有 / 没有 using the words in the boxes.

书店	邮局	东边	西边
gōngyuán	chāoshì	nánbian	běibian
公园	超市	南边	北边
dìtiězhàn	yínháng	qiánbian	hòubian

Wǒ jiā de dōngbian yǒu yī gè chāoshì.
我家的 东边 有一个 超市。

Chāoshì zài wǒ jiā de dōngbian.
超市 在我家的 东边。

Vocabulary extension

Draw a map of your neighbourhood. Use the places you have learnt in this unit and the places below.

shāngdiàn 商店 shop	jǐngchájú 警察局	police station
kāfēidiàn 咖啡店 café	lǚguǎn 旅馆	hotel
yàodiàn 药店 pharmacy	jiànshēnfáng 健身房	gymnasium

Now work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about your maps.

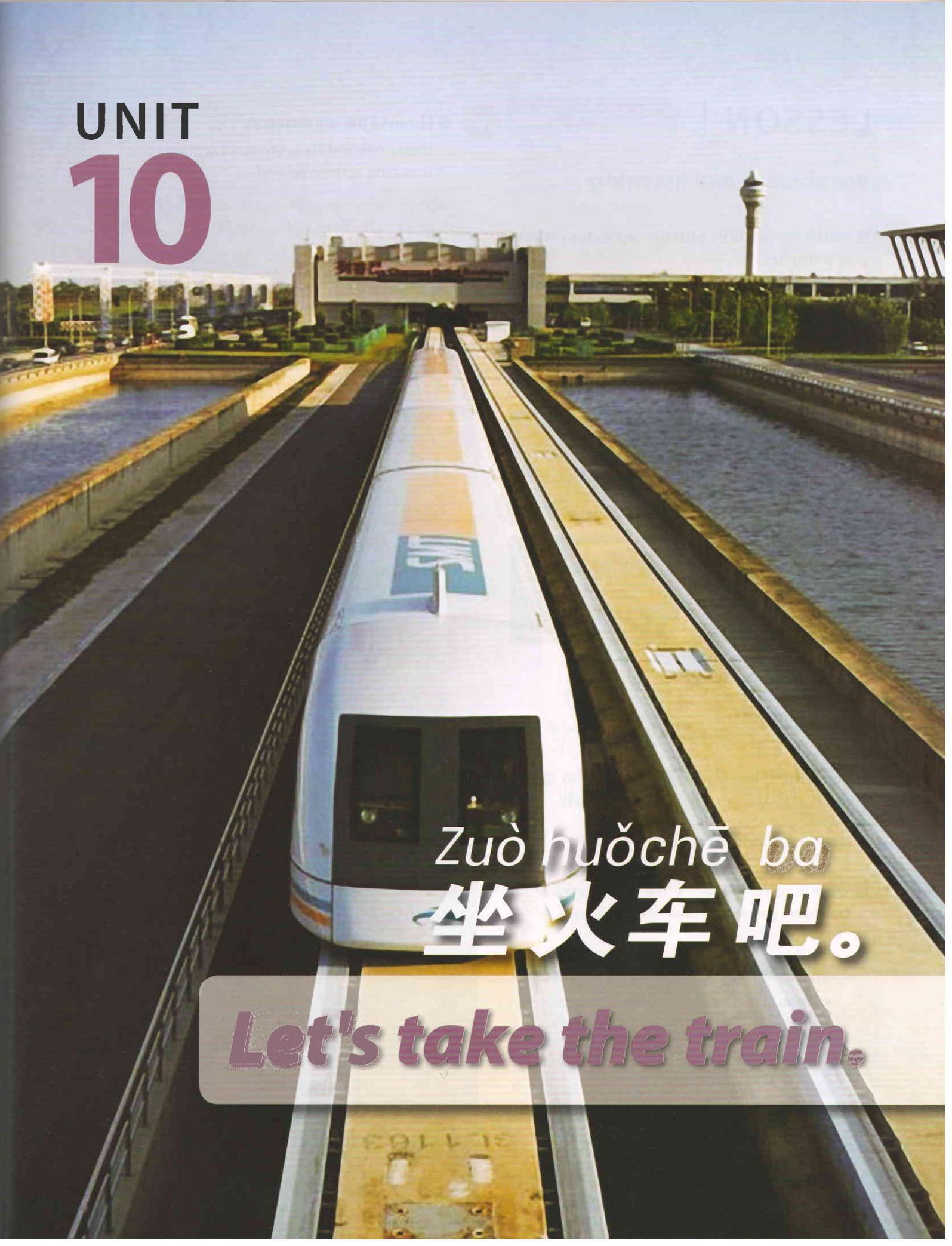
A: 你家附近有没有 _____?

B: 没有。/ 有，在 _____。

Vocabulary list

哪儿	nǎr	pron.	where	东边	dōngbian	n.	east
楼	lóu	n.	building, storey	宿舍	sùshè	n.	dormitory
怎么	zěnme	pron.	how	西边	xībian	n.	west
走	zǒu	v.	walk, go	地铁站	dìtiězhàn	n.	subway station
路人	lùrén	n.	passerby	北边	běibian	n.	north
邮局	yóujú	n.	post office	交通	jiāotōng	n.	transportation
后边	hòubian	n.	back	方便	fāngbiàn	adj.	convenient
往	wǎng	prep.	towards	联系	liánxì	v./n.	contact
南边	nánbian	n.	south	南京	Nánjing	n.	Nanjing
离	lí	v.	away from	平方米	píngfāngmǐ	measure word	square metre
这儿	zhèr	pron.	here	饭馆	fànguǎn	n.	restaurant
对	duì	adj.	right, correct	先生	xiānsheng	n.	Mr.
银行	yínháng	n.	bank	洗手间	xǐshǒujiān	n.	toilet, washroom
附近	fùjìn	n./adj.	vicinity, nearby	商店	shāngdiàn	n.	shop
前边	qiánbian	n.	front	咖啡店	kāfēidiàn	n.	café
分钟	fēnzhōng	n.	minute	药店	yàodiàn	n.	pharmacy
左右	zuǒyòu	n.	about	警察局	jǐngchájú	n.	police station
出租	chūzū	v.	rent out, lease	旅馆	lǚguǎn	n.	hotel
房子	fángzi	n.	flat, house	健身房	jiànshēnfáng	n.	gymnasium
近	jìn	adj.	near				

UNIT 10



Zuò huǒchē ba
坐火车吧。
Let's take the train.

LESSON | 1



3 Listen to the conversation.

Yeong-min and Steve are making plans to go shopping at the weekend.

Yōngmín Shǐdīfū nǐ de tīxù zài nǎlǐ
永民： 史蒂夫， 你的 T恤 在哪里

mǎi de Bù tài hǎokàn!
买的？不太好看！

Shǐdīfū Shì ma Zhè shì wǒ zuì xǐhuān de
史蒂夫： 是吗？这是我最喜欢的
tīxù wǒ hěn xǐhuān tā de yánse
T恤， 我很喜欢它的颜色。

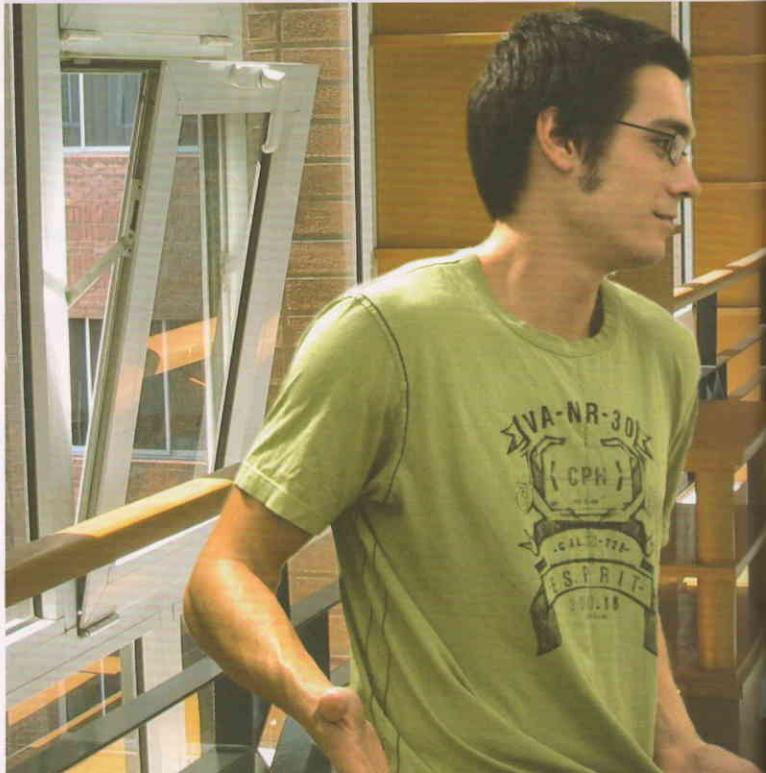
Yōngmín Nǐ xūyào yīxiē xīn yīfu
永民： 你需要一些新衣服。

Wǒmen yīqǐ qù gòuwù zhōngxin
我们一起去购物 中心
mǎi ba
买吧。

Shǐdīfū Shì bù shì zài sānlǐtún
史蒂夫： 是不是在三里屯？

Yōngmín Shì
永民： 是。

Shǐdīfū Zěnme qù Zuò gōnggòng qìchē
史蒂夫： 怎么去？坐 公共 汽车
háishi zuò chūzūchē
还是坐出租车？



Vocabulary and listening



- 1 Match the pictures with the words for means of transport.



1 zuò gōnggòng qìchē 坐 公共 汽车

2 qí zìxíngchē 骑自行车

3 zuò chūzūchē 坐 出租车

4 zuò dìtiě 坐 地铁

5 zuò huǒchē 坐 火车

6 zuò fēiji 飞机

Now listen and say the words.

- 2 Work in pairs. Tell each other what means of transport you would take to these places.

1 Běijīng 北京

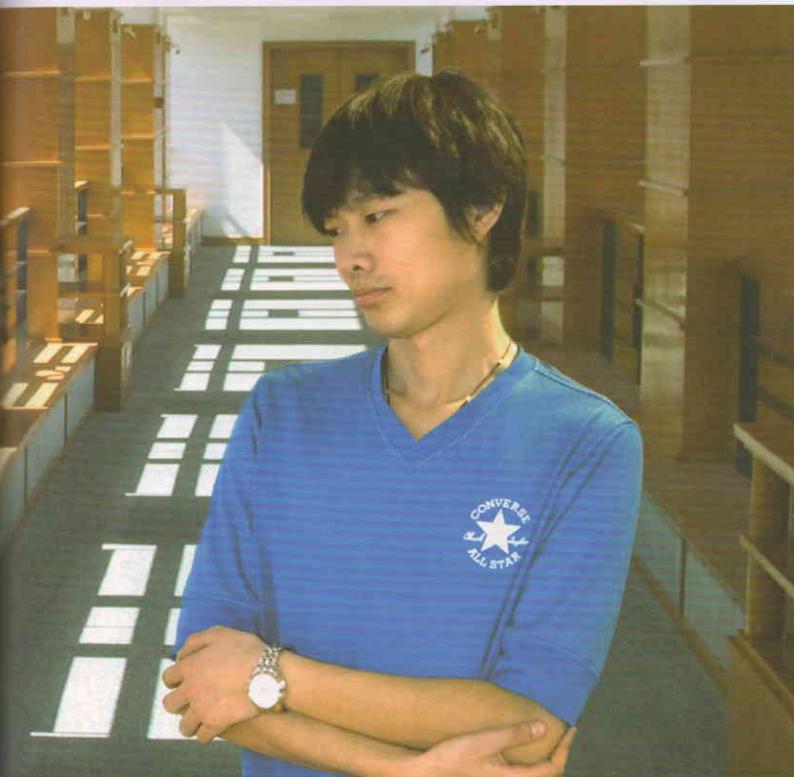
2 xuéxiào 学校

3 péngyou de jiā 朋友 的 家

4 gòuwù zhōngxin 购物 中心

LESSON 12

- Yǒngmín Zuò dìtiè ba dìtiè fāngbiàn yídiǎnr
永民：坐地铁吧，地铁方便一点儿。
- Shǐdīfū Hǎo
史蒂夫：好。
- Yǒngmín Xīngqīliù háishi Xīngqītiān qù
永民：星期六还是星期天去？
- Shǐdīfū Xīngqīliù ba
史蒂夫：星期六吧。
- Yǒngmín Hǎo Ránhòu wǒmen qù chī wǎnfàn
永民：好。然后我们去吃饭，
hǎo ma
好吗？
- Shǐdīfū Dāngrán hǎo Nàli yǒu shénme fànguǎn
史蒂夫：当然好！那里有什么饭馆？
- Yǒngmín Nàli yǒu Yìdàilì cāntīng yě yǒu
永民：那里有意大利餐厅，也有
Rìběn cāntīng
日本餐厅。
- Shǐdīfū Wǒmen chī Yìdàilicài ba
史蒂夫：我们吃意大利菜吧。
- Yǒngmín Hǎo Wǒ zuì xǐhuan chī Yìdàilicài
永民：好。我最喜欢吃意大利菜！



生词 New words

tā	it	háishi	or (in a question)
yánse	colour	chūzūchē	出租车 taxi
xūyào	need	ránhòu	然后 then
yīxiē	some	dāngrán	当然 of course
Sānlǐtún	Sanlitun, a place in Beijing	Yìdàilì	意大利 Italy
zuò	take (a vehicle)	cāntīng	餐厅 restaurant
gōnggòng	汽车 bus		



4 Listen again and answer the questions.

- Shǐdīfū de tīxù hǎokàn ma
1 史蒂夫的T恤好看吗？
- Xīngqīliù Yǒngmín hé Shǐdīfū qù nǎli
2 星期六永民和史蒂夫去哪里？
- Tāmen qù mǎi shénme
3 他们去买什么？
- Tāmen zěnme qù
4 他们怎么去？
- Yǒngmín zuì xǐhuan chī shénme
5 永民最喜欢吃什么？

5 Complete Steve's notes about the shopping trip.

Hé Yǒngmín yīqǐ gòuwù
和永民一起购物

dìfang
地方 (place):

shíjiān
时间:

jiāotōng
交通:

wǎnfàn
晚饭:

6 Work in pairs. Act out the conversation in Activity 3 using different places and means of transport.

Pronunciation and speaking

Difference between “q” and “ch”

1 Say the words aloud.

q		ch	
qī	qù	chī	chē
七	去	吃	车

q		ch	
qǐng	qún	chàng	chū
请	裙	唱	出

Now listen and repeat.

2 Say the tongue twister.

Chuān le qúnzi zuò chūzūchē qù chī qīngcài
穿了裙子坐出租车去吃青菜！

Now listen and repeat.

3 Write answers to the questions.

Nǐ qù nǎlǐ
1 你去哪里？

Nǐ zuò shénme chē qù
2 你坐什么车去？

Now work in pairs and say the conversations.

4 Listen and say the words.

1 zài 在	zuò 坐	zuì 最
2 zěnme 怎么	háishi 还是	dāngrán 当然
3 chūzūchē 出租车	dìtiè 地铁	gōnggòng qìchē 公共汽车

5 Work in pairs. You are going shopping downtown.

Choose the best way to get there.

A: 我们 ____ 去 还是 ____ 去？

B: 我们 ____ 去。

A: 我们 ____ 去，好吗？

B: 好吧。/不，我们 ____ 去。

6 Work in groups. Find out how your group members go to various places and complete the table.

Nǐ zěnme qù xuéxiào
A: 你怎么去学校？

Wǒ zuò gōnggòng qìchē qù
B: 我坐公共汽车去。

Nǐ zuò gōnggòng qìchē háishi zuò dìtiè
A: 你坐公共汽车还是坐地铁

qù shàngbān
去上班？

Wǒ zuò dìtiè qù
B: 我坐地铁去。

	Student 1	Student 2	Student 3
xuéxiào 学校			
gōngzuò 工作			
yīyuàn 医院			
chāoshì 超市			

CHINESE TO GO

Saying goodbye to people going on a journey

Yīlù-shùnfēng
一路顺风！

Have a good trip!

Zhùyì ānquán
注意安全！

Safety first!

Zhù nǐ yīlù-píng'ān
祝你一路平安。

Have a safe trip.

LESSON | 2

Reading and writing

1 Check the activities you like to do during the holidays.



a zuò chuán yóulǎn
□ 坐 船 游览



b páshān
□ 爬山



c lǚxíng
□ 旅行



d pāizhào
□ 拍照

2 Read Anna and Wang Yu's plan for a trip.

lǚxíng shíjiān shǔjià jiàqī de dì-yī
旅行时间：暑假（假期的第一

gè xīngqī
个星期）

qù nǎli Guìlín
去哪里：桂林

zěnme qù zuò huǒchē fāngbiàn piányi
怎么去：坐火车（方便、便宜）

yào qǐng de rén Shídifū hé Mǎkè
要请的人：史蒂夫和马克

zùo shénme zuò chuán yóulǎn gòuwù
做什么：坐船游览、购物、

páshān pāizhào cānguān
爬山、拍照、参观

yǒumíng de jǐngdiǎn
有名的景点

Now answer the questions.

1 安娜和王玉去哪里旅行？

2 她们怎么去？

3 她们跟谁一起去？

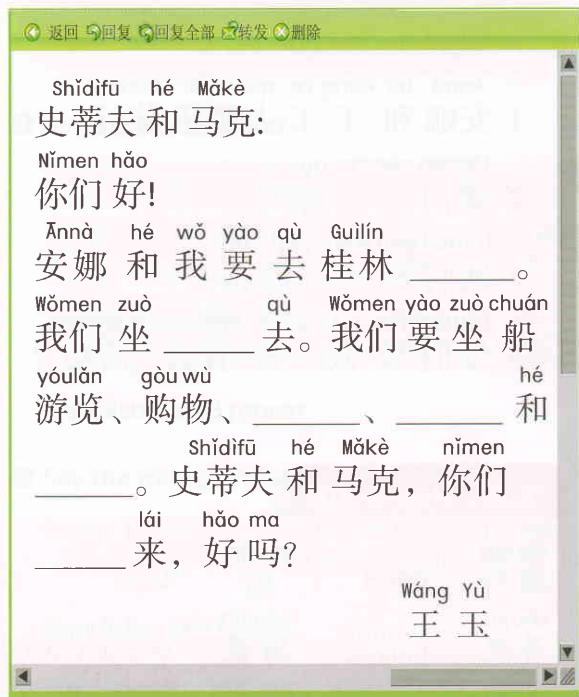
4 她们要做些什么活动？

生词 New words

lǚxíng	travel	chuán	boat
旅行		船	
shǔjià	summer holiday	yóulǎn	go sightseeing
暑假		游览	
jiàqī	holiday	páshān	climb a mountain
假期		爬山	
dì-yī gè	the first	pāizhào	take photos
第一个		拍照	
Guìlín	Guilin	cānguān	visit (a place)
桂林		参观	
huǒchē	train	jǐngdiǎn	scenic site
火车		景点	



- 3 Complete Wang Yu's email to Steve and Mark.
Wang Yu is inviting Steve and Mark on the trip.



- 4 Write the means of transport Anna and Wang Yu should take from their hotel in Guilin to do the following activities.



páshān	bāshí gōnglǐ 80 公里 (km)
1 爬山	shíliù gōnglǐ 16 公里
zuò chuán yóulǎn	yī gōnglǐ 1 公里
2 坐 船 游览	wǔ gōnglǐ 5 公里
qù gòuwù zhōngxīn	
3 去 购物 中心	
qù yǒumíng de fànguǎn	
4 去 有名 的 饭馆	

Language in use

Alternative questions
with

háishi
还是

1 Look at the conversations.

Nǐ jiào Shídifū háishi Mǎkè
A: 你 叫 史蒂夫 还是 马克?

Wǒ jiào Shídifū
B: 我 叫 史蒂夫。

Tā shì nǐ jiějie háishi nǐ mèimei
A: 她 是 你 姐姐 还是 你 妹妹?

Wǒ mèimei
B: 我 妹妹。

Wǒmen zuò chūzūchē háishi dìtiě
A: 我们 坐 出租车 还是 地铁?

Zuò dìtiě ba
B: 坐 地铁 吧。

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 还是 is used to join two alternatives in questions.
- 2 还是 means "and".
- 3 When the same verb is used before and after 还是, the second verb can be left out.

2 Complete the sentences using 还是 and the phrases in brackets.

- 1 Nǐ shì Zhōngguórén Rìběnrén
你是 _____ (中国人 / 日本人)?
- 2 Tā zuò gōnggòng qìchē dìtiě
她 坐 _____ (公共汽车 / 地铁)?
- 3 Wǒmen kàn diànyǐng tīng yīnyuè
我们 _____ (看电影 / 听音乐)?
- 4 Jīntiān shì wǔ hào liù hào
今天 是 _____ (五号 / 六号)?

Turn to page 169 for grammar reference.

Questions ending with

hǎo ma
好吗

1 Look at the conversation.

Wǒmen qù gòuwù hǎo ma

A: 我们去购物，好吗？

Hǎo qù nǎlǐ

B: 好，去哪里？

Wǒmen qù Sānlǐtún hǎo ma

A: 我们去三里屯，好吗？

Hǎo

B: 好。

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 好吗 can be used at the end of a sentence to make a suggestion.
- 2 好吗 can be used at the end of a sentence to ask for an opinion.
- 3 We use 好吗 to respond to suggestions.

2 Check the sentences that can have 好吗 added at the end to make questions.

Jiǔ hào shì wǒ bàba de shēngrì

1 九号是我爸爸的生日。

Wǒmen Xīngqīliù qù

2 我们星期六去。

Wǒmen zuò dìtiè

3 我们坐地铁。

Expressing superlatives with

zuì 最

1 Look at the phrases.

zuì xǐhuān 最喜欢 like the most

zuì hǎo 最好 the best

zuì piàoliang 最漂亮 the most beautiful

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 最 is used to express superlatives.
- 2 最 can be used before a verb or an adjective.
- 3 最 can be used both before and after the verb or adjective.

2 Write a sentence about yourself using 最.

► Turn to page 169 for grammar reference.

Using the particle

ba 吧

1 Look at the sentences.

Wǒmen zuò huǒchē qù ba
我们坐火车去吧。Let's take the train.

Zǒu ba
走吧。Let's go.

Shǐdīfū nǐ lái ba
史蒂夫，你来吧。Steve, you come.

Nǐmen zuò fēijī lái ba
你们坐飞机来吧。You could come here by air.

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 吧 can be used to indicate commands or suggestions.
- 2 吧 is used to ask for opinions.
- 3 吧 is used at the end of a sentence.

2 Complete the conversations using 吧 and the words in brackets.

Wǒmen zěnme qù gòuwù zhōngxīn
1 A: 我们怎么去购物中心？

B: _____。(公共汽车)

Wǒmen jǐdiǎn qù chāoshì
2 A: 我们几点去超市？

B: _____。(现在)

3 A: _____。(一起，银行)

B: 对不起，我没有时间，你去吧。

► Turn to page 170 for grammar reference.

LESSON | 3

Communication activity

1 Work alone.

You work as a volunteer on a project called "Experiencing China". The project organizes trips for students in your local area. Choose one of the four places below and plan a trip. Include:

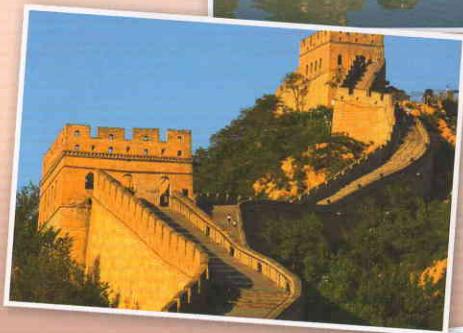
- the dates for the trip
- one place to go
- the activities for the tour



Shànghǎi
上海



Guilín
桂林



Běijīng
北京



Sānyà
三亚

2 Work in groups. Talk about the different choices you thought about in Activity 1. Make suggestions using 好吗 and 吧.

Shūjià qù Zhōngguó hǎo ma

A: 暑假去中国，好吗？

Hǎo qù nǎlǐ

B: 好，去哪里？

Qù Shànghǎi hǎo ma

A: 去上海，好吗？

Háishì qù Guìlín ba Nàli yǒu hěn duō jǐngdiǎn

B: 还是去桂林吧。那里有很多景点。

3 Tell the class about your plan for the trip.

Turn to pages 154 and 160 for more speaking practice.

Cultural Corner

China—a kingdom of bicycles

China is known to many as the "kingdom of bicycles". With its 10 million bicycles, Beijing has the largest number of bicycles of any city in the world. In a city with over 13 million people, 2.4 million can be found riding their bicycles to work every day. During rush hour, the roads teem with thousands of bikes, and car drivers need to be skilful at navigating their way through the congested roads.

For many Chinese people, especially those living in rural areas, bicycles are their main means of transport. This contrasts with Western countries where bike riding is often a form of physical exercise rather than a vital or sole means of transport.

In cities all over China, parking areas for bicycles can be seen everywhere on the streets. And as times change, electric bikes are becoming more popular too.

Character writing

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
又	again	观、对
饣	eat	饭、馆

- 1 Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

发 饮 友 饥

- 2 Match the words with the meanings.

xǐhuān	
1 喜欢	a restaurant
duì	
2 对	b like
cānguān	
3 参观	c right, correct
fànguǎn	
4 饭馆	d visit

- 3 Trace the characters in the boxes.

欢

对

饭

馆

Review and practice

- 1 Match the words with the meanings.

páshān	
1 爬山	a together
yīqǐ	
2 一起	b cheap
lǚxíng	
3 旅行	c climb a mountain
piányi	
4 便宜	d travel

- 2 Complete the sentences with the words from Activity 1.

Zuótiān wǒ hé péngyou	qù yóuyǒng
1 昨天 我和 朋友	去 游泳。
Zhè jiàn yīfu èershíwǔ kuài hěn	
2 这件 衣服 25 块, 很	。
Míngtiān wǒmen qù	hǎo ma
3 明天 我们 去	, 好吗?
Nǐ qù Běijīng	ma
4 你去 北京	吗?

- 3 Choose the best sentence to complete the conversations.

Wáng Yù

- 1 王玉: _____

Mǎkè Hǎo

马克: 好。

Wǒmen bādiǎn qù hǎo ma

- a 我们八点去, 好吗?

Wǒmen bādiǎn qù háishi jiǔdiǎn qù

- b 我们八点去还是九点去?

Wáng Yù

- 2 王玉: _____

Mǎkè Wǒ dìdi

马克: 我弟弟。

Tā shì nǐ dìdi ma

- a 他是你弟弟吗?

Tā shì nǐ gēge háishi nǐ dìdi?

- b 他是你哥哥还是你弟弟?

Wáng Yù Wǒmen qù nǎlǐ chīfàn

- 3 王玉: 我们去哪里吃饭?

Mǎkè

马克: _____

Wǒmen qù Zhōngcānguǎn ba

- a 我们去 中餐馆 吧。

Wǒmen qù chīfàn ba

- b 我们去吃饭吧。

Vocabulary extension

Look at the words in the box.

jīayóuzhàn 加油站 petrol station
huǒchēzhàn 火车站 railway station

tíngchēchǎng 停车场 car park
fēijichǎng 飞机场 airport

Now write the words under the appropriate signs.



Vocabulary list

它	tā	pron.	it	第一个	dì-yī gè	the first
颜色	yánsè	n.	colour	桂林	Guìlín	n.
需要	xūyào	v.	need	火车	huǒchē	n.
一些	yíxiē		quantifier some	船	chuán	n.
三里屯	sānlǐtún	n.	Sanlitun, a place in Beijing	游览	yóulǎn	go sightseeing
坐	zuò	v.	take (a vehicle)	爬山	páshān	climb a mountain
公共汽车	gōnggòng qìchē	n.	bus	拍照	pāizhào	take photos
还是	háishi	conj.	or (in a question)	参观	cānguān	visit (a place)
出租车	chūzūchē	n.	taxi	景点	jǐngdiǎn	scenic site
然后	ránhòu	conj.	then	骑	qí	ride (bicycle, etc)
当然	dāngrán	adv.	of course	自行车	zìxíngchē	bicycle
意大利	Yìdàlì	n.	Italy	飞机	fēijī	aeroplane
餐厅	cāntīng	n.	restaurant	加油站	jīayóuzhàn	petrol station
旅行	lǚxíng	v./n.	travel	火车站	huǒchēzhàn	railway station
暑假	shǔjià	n.	summer holiay	停车场	tíngchēchǎng	car park
假期	jiàqī	n.	holiday	飞机场	fēijichǎng	airport

UNIT
11



Wǒ huì tiàowǔ
我会跳舞。

I can dance.

LESSON | 1

Vocabulary and listening



2-38

1 Match the names of sports with the pictures.

- | | | |
|----------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| pīngpāngqiú
1 乒乓球 | yóuyǒng
3 游泳 | wǎngqiú
5 网球 |
| lánqiú
2 篮球 | tiàowǔ
4 跳舞 | zúqiú
6 足球 |



Now listen and number the sports in the order you hear them.



2 Listen to the conversation.

Steve and Wang Yu are planning to do some exercise at the weekend.

- | | | |
|-----------------|--|--------------------------------------|
| Shídìfū
史蒂夫: | Wáng Yù
王玉, | nǐ xǐhuan shénme yùndòng
你喜欢什么运动? |
| Wáng Yù
王玉: | Wǒ xǐhuan lánqiú yě xǐhuan zúqiú
我喜欢篮球,也喜欢足球。 | |
| Shídìfū
史蒂夫: | Xiàge yuè nǐ xiǎng qù kàn zúqiú bǐsài
下个月你想去看足球比赛
ma
吗? | |
| Wáng Yù
王玉: | Dāngrán xiǎng Shénme qiúduì bǐsài
当然想! 什么球队比赛? | |
| Shídìfū
史蒂夫: | Zhōngguóduì hé Yinggélán duì zài wǒmen dàxué fùjìn de tǐyùchǎng
中国队和英格兰队,在我们大学附近的体育场。 | |
| Wáng Yù
王玉: | Hǎo wǒ gēn nǐ qù kàn Wǒ xīwàng
好,我跟你去看。我希望
Zhōngguóduì yíng
中国队赢! | |
| Shídìfū
史蒂夫: | Wǒ xīwàng Yinggélán duì yíng
我希望英格兰队赢! | |
| Wáng Yù
王玉: | Zhège zhōumò nǐ xiǎng qù yùndòng ma
这个周末你想去运动吗? | |

生词 New words

zúqiú 足球	football	xīwàng 希望	hope
xiàge 下个	next	yíng 赢	win
xiǎng 想	think, want	wǎngqiú 网球	tennis
bǐsài 比赛	match, competition	huì 会	can, be able to
qiú 球	ball, ball game	tiàowǔ 跳舞	dance
duì 队	team	guo 过	indicator of past actions
Yīnggélán 英格兰	England	yóuyǒng 游泳	swim
tǐyùchǎng 体育场	stadium, sports ground		



Shídīfū Shénme yùndòng
史蒂夫：什么运动？

Wáng Yù Wǒmen qù dǎ wǎngqiú hǎo ma
王玉：我们去打网球，好吗？

Shídīfū Duìbuqǐ wǒ bù huì dǎ wǎngqiú
史蒂夫：对不起，我不会打网球，
dànshì wǒ huì tiàowǔ wǒmen
但是我会跳舞，我们
yìqǐ qù tiàowǔ ba
一起去跳舞吧。

Wáng Yù Wǒ bù xǐhuān tiàowǔ yě méi xuéguo
王玉：我不喜欢跳舞，也没学过。

Shídīfū Wǒmen qù yóuyǒng zěnmeyàng
史蒂夫：我们去游泳 怎么样？

Wáng Yù Hǎo Wǒ zuì xǐhuān yóuyǒng
王玉：好！我最喜欢游泳。

Shídīfū Wǒmen míngtiān zǎoshang qù kěyǐ ma
史蒂夫：我们明天早上去，可以吗？

Wáng Yù Wǒ zǎoshang yào pǎobù xiàwǔ qù ba
王玉：我早上要跑步，下午去吧。

Shídīfū Hǎo míngtiān jiàn
史蒂夫：好，明天见。



3 Listen again and check the true statements.

- Wáng Yù xǐhuān dǎ lánqiú
 1 王玉喜欢打篮球。
- Zhège yuè tǐyùchǎng yǒu zúqiú
 2 这个月 体育场有足球
- bǐsài
比赛。
- Wáng Yù kěyǐ gēn Shídīfū qù kàn
 3 王玉可以跟史蒂夫去看
- zúqiú bǐsài
足球比赛。
- Shídīfū bù huì dǎ wǎngqiú
 4 史蒂夫不会打网球。
- Wáng Yù xǐhuān tiàowǔ
 5 王玉喜欢跳舞。
- Tāmen míngtiān xiàwǔ qù yóuyǒng
 6 他们明天下午去游泳。

4 Work in pairs. Act out the conversation in Activity 2 using different sports.



5 Listen and complete the table with the names of sports.

	xǐhuān 喜欢	bù xǐhuān 不喜欢
Mǎkè 马克		
Yǒngmín 永民		
Ānnà 安娜		

Now work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about the facts in the table.

A: 马克喜欢什么运动？

B: 他喜欢……。

A: 马克不喜欢什么运动？

B: 他不喜欢……。

Pronunciation and speaking

Difference between “zh” and “ch”

1 Say the words aloud.

zh	zhè	zhù	zhāng
ch	chē	chū	cháng

Now listen and repeat.

2 Listen and check the words you hear.

- 1 a zhǐ 只 b chī 吃
 2 a zhēn 真 b chén 陈
 3 a zhào 赵 b chāo 超

Now listen again and say the words.

3 Listen and say the words.

pǎobù	tiàowǔ	yóuyǒng
1 跑步	跳舞	游泳
yùndòng	bǐsài	qiúduì
2 运动	比赛	球队
xiǎng	huì	xīwàng
3 想	会	希望

4 Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions using the words in brackets.

Wǒ jiějie xǐhuan chī Yídàilì cài

1 A: 我姐姐喜欢 吃 意大利菜。

B: _____ (我哥哥, 也)

Qǐngwèn fùjìn yǒu méiyǒu chāoshì

2 A: 请问 附近 有 没有 超市?

B: _____ (有)

Zhào lǎoshī huì zuò huochē qù ma

3 A: 赵 老师 会 坐 火车 去 吗?

B: _____ (会)

Zhège zhōumò nǐ mǎile shénme

4 A: 这个 周末 你 买了 什么?

B: _____ (一条 长 裙子)

5 Work in pairs. Talk about whether you can play and if you like playing the sports below.

pīngpāngqiú
乒乓球

lánqiú
篮球

tiàowǔ
跳舞

yóuyǒng
游泳

Nǐ huì ma
A: 你会 吗?

Wǒ huì Wǒ bù huì
B: 我会。 / 我 不会。

Nǐ xǐhuan ma
A: 你 喜欢 吗?

Wǒ xǐhuan Wǒ bù xǐhuan
B: 我 喜欢 。 / 我 不 喜欢 。

6 Work with another pair. Tell them if your partner in Activity 5 can play and likes playing the different sports.

..... bù huì , tā tā bù
..... (不)会 , 他 / 她 (不)
xǐhuan
喜欢 。

CHINESE TO GO

Encouraging people

Jiāyóu

加油!

Come on!

Bié fàngqì

别 放 弃 !

Don't give up!

Nǐ néng xíng

你 能 行 !

You can do it!

Jiānchí jiù shì shènglì

坚 持 就 是 胜 利 !

Perseverance leads to success.

LESSON | 2

Reading and writing

- 1 Work in pairs. Discuss which of these sports you have tried.



bèngjí
蹦极



huáxuē
滑雪



chōnglàng
冲浪



qiánshuǐ
潜水

- 2 Read Mark's questionnaire and answer the questions.

Mǎkè huì shénme yùndòng

1 马克会什么运动？

Mǎkè měi xīngqī zuò duōshao gè xiāoshí yùndòng

2 马克每星期做多少个小时运动？

Tā hé shéi yīqǐ zuò yùndòng

3 他和谁一起做运动？

Tā zài nǎlǐ zuò yùndòng

4 他在哪里做运动？

生词 New words

xiūxián	leisure	huáxuē	ski
wènjuàn	questionnaire	qiánshuǐ	dive
xìngbié	gender	bèngjí	bungee jump
nán	male	qítā	others, other
tǐ	play (with feet), kick	xiāoshí	hour
pīngpāngqiú	table tennis	shíhou	time
chōnglàng	surf		

学生 运动 和 休闲 问卷

xìngmíng Mǎkè
姓名：马克

xìngbié nán
性别：男

niánlíng shíjiǔ suì
年龄：19岁

guójí Àodàiliyà
国籍：澳大利亚

Nǐ huì shénme yùndòng
你会什么运动？

tǐ zúqiú	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	chōnglàng	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
yóuyǒng	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	huáxuē	<input type="checkbox"/>
dǎ lánqiú	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	qiánshuǐ	<input type="checkbox"/>
dǎ pīngpāngqiú	<input type="checkbox"/>	bèngjí	<input type="checkbox"/>
qítā	<input type="checkbox"/>	其他	<input type="checkbox"/>

Nǐ měi xīngqī zuò duōshao gè xiāoshí yùndòng
你每星期做多少个小时运动？

0 1-2 3-4 5-10

Nǐ shénme shíhou zuò yùndòng
你什么时候做运动？

Měi tiān xiàwǔ wǔ diǎn
每天下午五点。

Nǐ hé shéi yīqǐ zuò yùndòng
你和谁一起做运动？

Hé péngyou yīqǐ zuò
和朋友一起做。

Nǐ zài nǎlǐ zuò yùndòng
你在哪里做运动？

家里 学校 体育场

- 3 Answer the questionnaire using your own information.
- 4 Write a blog post about your favourite sports and recreational activities.

wǒ de xiūxián yùndòng
我的休闲运动

我的名字是_____，今年_____岁。我是_____人，现在住在_____. 我会_____, _____, 也会_____. 我每天运动_____. 和_____一起运动。

分享 | 评论 (16) | 阅读 (476) | 固定链接 | 发表于 15:36

Language in use

Using modal verbs

kěyǐ huì
可以 / 会

- 1 Look at the sentences.

Subject	Predicate			
	Modal verb	Adverbial	Verb	Object
Wǒ 我	kěyǐ 可以		shuō 说	Yīngyǔ 英语。
Mǎkè 马克	kěyǐ 可以	gēn nǐ 跟你	qù 去。	
Nǐ 你	kěyǐ 可以	yìqǐ 一起	qù 去。	

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 可以 can be used to talk about ability and possibility.
- 2 可以 can be used to talk about permission.
- 3 可以 can be used to talk about obligation.

- 2 Look at the sentences.

Tā huì yóuyǒng ma
她会游泳吗?

Does she know how to swim?

Tā huì tiàowǔ
他会跳舞。

He knows how to dance.

Wǒmen huì chàng Zhōngwéngē
我们会唱中文歌。

We can sing Chinese songs.

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 会 means an ability to do something.
- 2 会 is used to ask for permission.
- 3 会 is usually followed by a verb.



3 Complete the sentences with 可以 or 会 .

- 1 你 _____ 去他的生日派对。
 2 我 _____ 唱中文歌。
 3 她 _____ 打网球。
 4 你 _____ 跳舞吗?
 5 这条裙子真便宜, 你 _____ 买。

Talking about past actions with

guo
过

1 Look at the sentences.

Tā qùguo Yìdàlì
她去过意大利。 She has been to Italy.

Tā xuéguo Zhōngwén
她学过中文。 She has studied Chinese.

Wǒ chīguo Rìběncài
我吃过日本菜。 I have had Japanese food.

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 过 is always used with a verb.
 2 过 is usually followed by a noun.
 3 过 cannot be used in the past perfect tense.

2 Look at the sentences.

Tā méi qùguo Yìdàlì
她没去过意大利。 She has not been to Italy.

Tā méi xuéguo Zhōngwén
她没学过中文。 She has never studied Chinese.

Wǒ méi chīguo Rìběncài
我没吃过日本菜。 I have never had Japanese food.

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 没 means "not".
 2 没 can be used before the subject.
 3 没 should be placed after a noun or pronoun.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1 Guìlín qù tā guo
桂林 /去/他/过/。

2 diànyǐng guo kàn tā zhège
电影 /过/看/她/这个/。

3 guo zuò hùshì tā méi
过/做/护士/她/没/。

4 méi Yìdàilicài guo tā chī
没/意大利菜/过/他/吃/。

1 Look at the sentences.

Subject	Predicate			
	Verb 1 (pivotal verb)	Object 1	Verb 2	Object 2
Wǒ 我	xīwàng 希望	Zhōngguóduì 中国队	yíng 赢。	
Shídīfū 史蒂夫	qǐng 请	Wáng Yù 王玉	chī 吃	Zhōngcān 中餐。
Mǎkè 马克	qǐng 请	Ānnà 安娜	kàn 看	diànyǐng 电影。

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 In a pivotal sentence, the object of the first verb functions as the subject of the second verb.
 2 A pivotal verb must always come after another verb.
 3 Pivotal sentences can be used to express an invitation or wish.

2 Write a pivotal sentence using 请 or 希望 .

Turn to page 170 for grammar reference.

Turn to page 170 for grammar reference.

LESSON | 3

Communication activity

1 Work in groups.

You work for a local school which runs various after-school and weekend classes. You are working with your colleagues on an advertisement to promote the classes. Plan the following:

bān

• 班 (classes)

rìqī

hé

shíjiān

• 日期 (dates) 和 时间

xuésheng niánlíng

• 学生 年龄

shàngkè dìdiǎn

• 上课 地点 (class venue)

xuéfèi

• 学费 (fees)

Include the following information:

- directions to the school
- number of students in each class

2 Design your advertisement.

3 Present your advertisement to the class.

Now ask and answer questions about the advertisement. Use the prompts below to help you.

Qù xuéxiào zěnme zǒu

去 学校 怎么 走?

Měi bān yǒu duōshao gè xuésheng

每班 有 多少 个 学生 ?

► Turn to pages 155 and 161 for more speaking practice.

Cultural Corner

Dance: a popular pastime

If you go to a park early in the morning in any city in China, you'll probably see a lot of people dancing to music. Dancing, as a form of exercise and relaxation, has become an important part of everyday life for many people. Apart from traditional Chinese dances such as folk dancing and *Yangge*, Western dances such as ballroom dancing are also very popular. Men and women may dance as couples or in groups. Women, particularly older women, often dance together.

Character writing

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
王	jade	班
钅	metal	钟

- 1 Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

理 望 钱 铁

- 2 Match the words with the meanings.

1 jiàqian	a football
2 xiànzài	b bank
3 zúqiú	c now
4 yínháng	d price

- 3 Trace the characters in the boxes.



现 现



球 球



银 银



钱 钱

Review and practice

- 1 Match the words with the meanings.

yóuyǒng	a jogging
1 游泳	b table tennis
lánqiú	c swimming
2 篮球	d tennis
pǎobù	e basketball
3 跑步	
pīngpāngqiú	
4 乒乓球	
wǎngqiú	
5 网球	

- 2 Match the questions with the answers.

Nǐ jīntiān wǎnshàng xiǎng kàn diànyǐng ma
1 你今天晚上想看电影吗?

Nǐ xǐhuān shénme yùndòng
2 你喜欢什么运动?

Qǐngwèn fùjìn yǒu méiyǒu tǐyùchǎng
3 请问,附近有没有体育场?

Yǒu zài yínháng hòubian
a 有,在银行后边。

Wǒ xǐhuān dǎ lánqiú
b 我喜欢打篮球。

Duìbuqǐ jīntiān wǎnshàng wǒ yào gōngzuò
c 对不起,今天晚上我要工作。

- 3 Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

duìbuqǐ yīqǐ bǐsài pǎobù zěnmeyàng
对不起 一起 比赛 跑步 怎么样

Mǎkè Wǒmen míngtiān zǎoshang yīqǐ qù
马克: 我们明天早上一起去_____,
hǎoma 好吗?

Shǐdīfū míngtiān zǎoshang wǒ yào gōngzuò
史蒂夫: _____, 明天早上我要工作。

Mǎkè míngtiān xiàwǔ
马克: 明天下午_____?

Shǐdīfū xiàwǔ wǒ yào qù kān zúqiú
史蒂夫: 下午我要去看足球_____。

Mǎkè wǒ kěyǐ qù ma
马克: 我可以_____去吗?

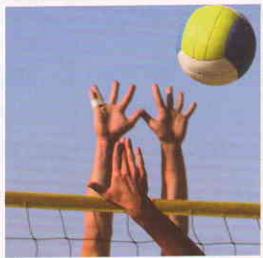
Shǐdīfū Kěyǐ
史蒂夫: 可以。

Vocabulary extension

Look at the sports.



qūgùnqiú
曲棍球 hockey



páiqiú
排球 volleyball



bàngqiú
棒球 baseball



gǎnlānqiú
橄榄球 rugby

Now work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about each other's favourite sports.

Nǐ xǐhuan dǎ bàngqiú ma?
A: 你喜欢 打 棒球 吗?

Wǒ bù xǐhuan dǎ bàngqiú wǒ xǐhuan……
B: 我 不 喜欢 打 棒球, 我 喜欢……

Vocabulary list

足球	zúqiú	n.	football
下个	xiàge		next
想	xiǎng	v.	think, want
比赛	bǐsài	n.	match, competition
球	qiú	n.	ball, ball game
队	duì	n.	team
英格兰	Yīnggélán	n.	England
体育场	tǐyùchǎng	n.	stadium, sports ground
希望	xiwàng	v.	hope
赢	yíng	v.	win
网球	wǎngqiú	n.	tennis
会	huì	v.	can, be able to
跳舞	tiàowǔ	v.	dance
过	guo		indicator of past actions
游泳	yóuyǒng	v.	swim
休闲	xiūxián	n./v.	leisure, have leisure
问卷	wènjuàn	n.	questionnaire

性别	xìngbié	n.	gender
男	nán	n.	male
踢	tī	v.	play (with feet), kick
乒乓球	pīngpāngqiú	n.	table tennis
冲浪	chōnglàng	v.	surf
滑雪	huáxuě	v.	ski
潜水	qiánshuǐ	v.	dive
蹦极	bèngjí	v.	bungee jump
其他	qítā	pron.	others, other
小时	xiǎoshí	n.	hour
时候	shíhou	n.	time
曲棍球	qūgùnqiú	n.	hockey
棒球	bàngqiú	n.	baseball
排球	páiqiú	n.	volleyball
橄榄球	gǎnlānqiú	n.	rugby

UNIT
12



Wǒmen qù kàn jīngjù
我们去看京剧。

*We're going to the
Beijing opera.*

LESSON | 1



2 Listen to the conversation.

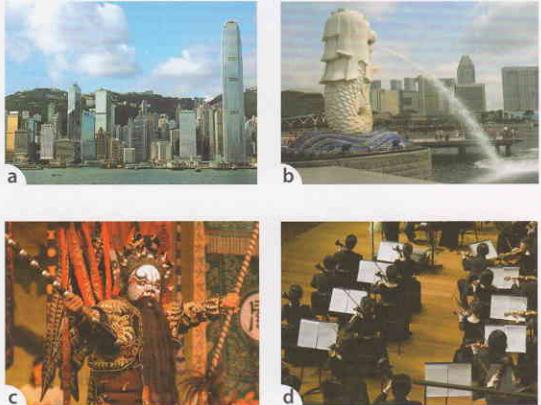
Anna, Steve and Yeong-min are discussing their holiday plans.

Vocabulary and listening

1 Match the words with the pictures.

2-46

- | | | | |
|------|-----------|-------|-----------|
| 1 香港 | Xīānggǎng | 3 新加坡 | Xīnjiāpō |
| 2 京剧 | jīngjù | 4 音乐会 | yīnyuèhuì |



Now listen and say the words.

Ānnà Yǒngmín Shǐdīfū jiàqī nǐmen dǎsuan
安娜：永民，史蒂夫，假期你们打算

zuò shénme
做什么？

Yǒngmín Wǒ měi gè jiàqī dōu qù lǚxíng
永民：我每个假期都去旅行。

Shǐdīfū Wǒ yě dǎsuan qù lǚxíng huòzhě huí jiā
史蒂夫：我也打算去旅行，或者回家。

Ānnà Bié huí jiā le tài yuǎn le
安娜：别回家了，太远了！

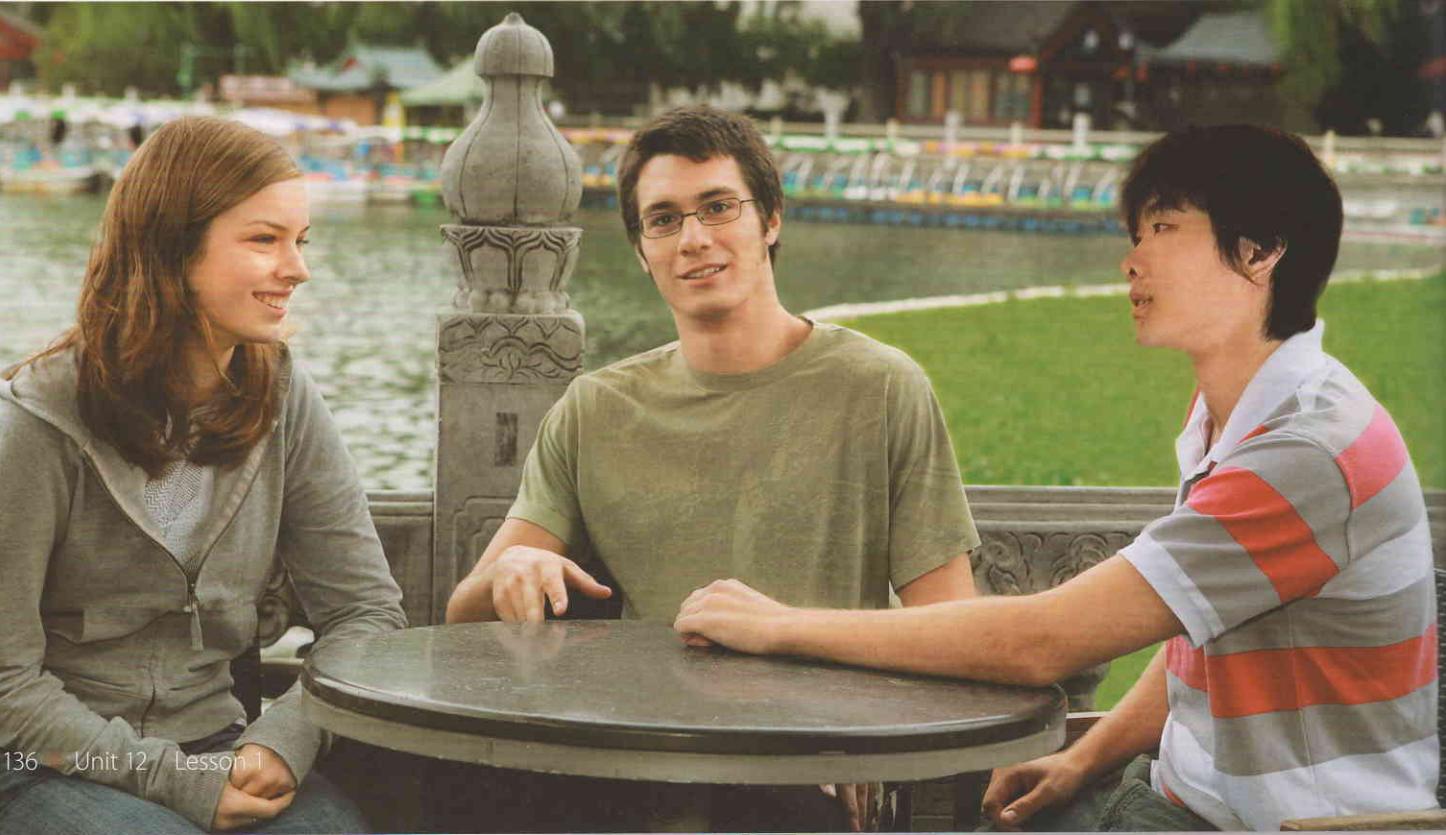
Wǒmen yìqǐ qù lǚxíng hǎo ma
我们一起去旅行，好吗？

Shǐdīfū Qù shénme dìfang Xīnjiāpō háishi
史蒂夫：去什么地方？新加坡还是

Xīānggǎng
香港？

Yǒngmín Dāngrán shì Xīānggǎng wǒ xǐhuan Xīānggǎng
永民：当然是香港，我喜欢香港。

Ānnà Xīnjiāpō tài yuǎn le qù Xīānggǎng ba
安娜：新加坡太远了，去香港吧。



Zài nàlǐ wǒmen kěyǐ gòuwù yě
在 那 里 我 们 可 以 购 物， 也
kěyǐ tīng yīnyuèhuì
可 以 听 音 乐 会。

Shǐdīfū Nàme wǒmen qù Xiānggǎng ba
史 蒂 夫： 那 么 我 们 去 香 港 吧。

Yǒngmín Wǒmen zěnme qù Zuò fēijī háishi
永 民： 我 们 怎 么 去？ 坐 飞 机 还 是
zuò huochē
坐 火 车？

Ānnà Dāngrán shì zuò fēijī fēijī hěn
安 娜： 当 然 是 坐 飞 机， 飞 机 很
fāngbiàn
方 便。

Yǒngmín Huí Běijīng yǐhòu wǒmen kěyǐ qù
永 民： 回 北京 以 后 我 们 可 以 去
kàn jīngjù
看 京 剧。

Shǐdīfū Tàihǎo le wǒ zuì xǐhuān kàn jīngjù
史 蒂 夫： 太 好 了， 我 最 喜 欢 看 京 剧。

生词 New words

dǎsuan	plan	Xiānggǎng	Hong Kong
打算		香港	香港
huòzhě	or	nàme	那么
或者	(in a statement)	那么	then, so
huí	go back	fēijī	飞机
回		飞机	aeroplane
bié	do not	yǐhòu	以后
别		以后	after
dìfang	place	jīngjù	京剧
地方		京剧	Beijing opera
Xīnjiāpō			
新加坡	Singapore		

3 Listen again and check the correct answers.

Ānnà Yǒngmín hé Shǐdīfū yào qù
1 安 娜、 永 民 和 史 蒂 夫 要 去
shénme dìfang
什 么 地 方？

Běijīng
 a 北京

Xiānggǎng
 b 香 港

Xīnjiāpō
 c 新 加 坡

Tāmen jiàqī bù dǎsuan zuò shénme
2 他 们 假 期 不 打 算 做 什 么？

kàn jīngjù
 a 看 京 剧

tīng yīnyuèhuì
 b 听 音 乐 会

páshān
 c 爬 山

Tāmen dǎsuan zěnme qù Xiānggǎng
3 他 们 打 算 怎 么 去 香 港？

zuò huochē
 a 坐 火 车

zuò dìtiě
 b 坐 地 铁

zuò fēijī
 c 坐 飞 机

4 Work in groups of three and act out the conversation in Activity 2. Create your own plans for the coming holiday.

Pronunciation and speaking

Learn to listen and speak

Sentence intonation

2-48

- 1 Listen to the sentences. Pay attention to the intonation.

- Wǒmen míngtiān qù hǎo ma
1 我们 明天 去, 好吗? ↗
- Jiàqī wǒ xiǎng qù gōngzuò
2 假期 我 想 去 工作。↘
- Wǒ dǎsuan qù lǚxíng nǐ ne
3 我 打算 去 旅行, 你 呢? ↗
- Xīnjiāpō tài yuǎn le
4 新加坡 太 远 了。↘

Now listen again and say the sentences.
Make sure you use the correct intonation.

2-49

- 2 Read the sentences aloud.

- Wǒmen yīqǐ qù lǚxíng hǎo ma
1 我们 一起 去 旅行, 好吗?
- Wǒmen kěyǐ qù kàn jīngjù
2 我们 可以 去 看 京剧。
- Wǒ jiào Wáng Yù nǐ ne
3 我 叫 王 玉, 你 呢?
- Wǒ zuì xǐhuān tīng yīnyuèhuì
4 我 最 喜欢 听 音乐会。

Now listen and repeat.

2-50

- 3 Listen and say the words.

1 jiàqī	dǎsuan	huíjiā
2 yǐhòu	dāngrán	huòzhě
3 lǚxíng	yīnyuèhuì	jīngjù

Work in pairs.

Student A: Think of an activity you plan to do on holiday.

Student B: Ask Student A questions about the activity he or she wants to do.

- Nǐ jiàqī dǎsuan zuò shénme
A: 你 假期 打算 做 什 么?
- Wǒ dǎsuan
B: 我 打算

- Nǐ dǎsuan qù shénme dìfang
A: 你 打算 去 什 么 地 方?
- Wǒ dǎsuan qù
B: 我 打算 去

- Nǐ hé shéi yīqǐ qù
A: 你 和 谁 一 起 去?
- Wǒ
B: 我

Now change roles.

2-51

CHINESE TO GO

Expressions for travellers

Wǒ yào dìng piào dìng fángjiān
我要 订 票 / 订 房间。
I want to book a ticket/room.

Wǒ yào tuì piào gǎiqiān
我要 退 票 / 改 签。
I want to get a refund/change a ticket.

LESSON | 2

Reading and writing

1 Match the pictures with the names of the cities.



1 Shànghǎi 上海



2 Běijīng 北京



3 Xī'ān 西安



4 Guǎngzhōu 广州



2 Read Wang Yu's online dialogue with Bob and Peter, her friends in the UK.

生词 New words

jīnnián	this year	Xī'ān	Xi'an
níán	year	yīnggāi	should
hǎowán	fun	Bīngmǎiyōng	Terracotta Warriors
说	say	piàoliang	pretty
只	only	chéngshì	city
觉得	think, feel	qiān	thousand
班	measure word	lìshǐ	history
从	from	zhǔyi	idea

Wang Yu

— □ ×

Bob

Jīnnián jiàqī wǒ dǎsuan qù Zhōngguó lǚxíng
今年假期我打算去中国旅行。
Zhōngguó hǎowán de difang hěn duō dànshì wǒ
中国好玩的地方很多，但是我
zhǐ kěyǐ qù yī gè difang Péngyou shuō Shànghǎi
只可以去一个地方。朋友说上海
hé Běijīng dōu hěn bùcuò Nǐmen juéde ne
和北京都很不错。你们觉得呢？

Wang Yu

Qù Běijīng ba Měi tiān dōu yǒu liǎng bān fēijī
去北京吧。每天都有两班飞机
cóng Yīngguó dào Běijīng hěn fāngbiàn
从英国到北京，很方便。

Peter

Xī'ān shì wǒ zuì xǐhuan de difang wǒ juéde
西安是我最喜欢的地方，我觉得
nǐ yīnggāi qù Xī'ān Nǐ kěyǐ kàn Bīngmǎiyōng
你应该去西安。你可以看兵马俑。
Wáng Yù nǐ juéde yīnggāi qù Xī'ān ma
王玉，你觉得Bob应该去西安吗？

Wang Yu

Xī'ān shì yī gè hěn piàoliang de chéngshì yǒu
西安是一个很漂亮的城巿，有
jǐ qiān nián de lìshǐ
几千年的历史。

Bob

Hǎo zhǔyi wǒ xǐhuan lìshǐ Xī'ān bùcuò
好主意，我喜欢历史。西安不错。
Wǒ zěnme qù Xī'ān ne
我怎么去西安呢？

Wang Yu

Nǐ kěyǐ zuò fēijī
你可以坐飞机。

关闭 (C) 发送 (S) ▾

Lesson 2 Unit 12 139

3 Check the true statements.

1 Bob 只可以去一个地方旅行。

2 每星期都有两班飞机

从 英国 到 北京。

3 兵马俑 在北京。

4 西安有几千年的历史。

4 Answer Wang Yu's questions.



Wang Yu

我想去你住的城市旅行。

那里有什么好玩的地方吗?



我住的城市很_____，

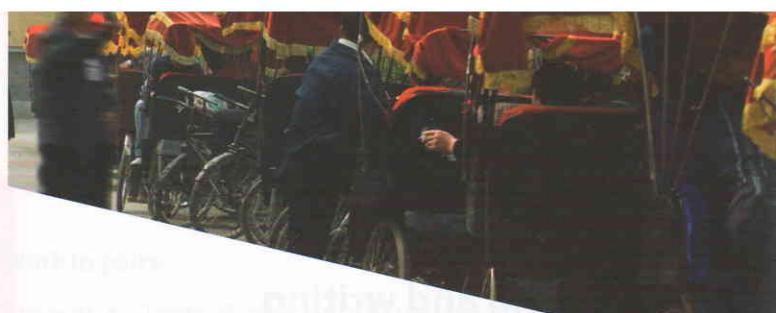
这里有很多_____。

你可以在这里_____，

也可以_____。

你可以 _____ 或者 _____。

关闭 (C) 发送 (S)



Language in use

Expressing alternatives using

或者 / 还是

1 Look at the sentences.

Wǒmen jīntiān qù huòzhě míngtiān qù
我们今天去或者明天去。
We go today or tomorrow.

Wǒmen jīntiān qù háishi míngtiān qù
我们今天去还是明天去?
Do we go today or tomorrow?

Tā shì Zhōngguórén huòzhě Hángrén
他是中国人或者韩国人。
He is Chinese or Korean.

Tā shì Zhōngguórén háishi Hángrén
他是中国人还是韩国人?
Is he Chinese or Korean?

Now check the two correct explanations.

1 Both **还是** and **或者** are used to express alternatives.

2 Both **还是** and **或者** can be used in questions.

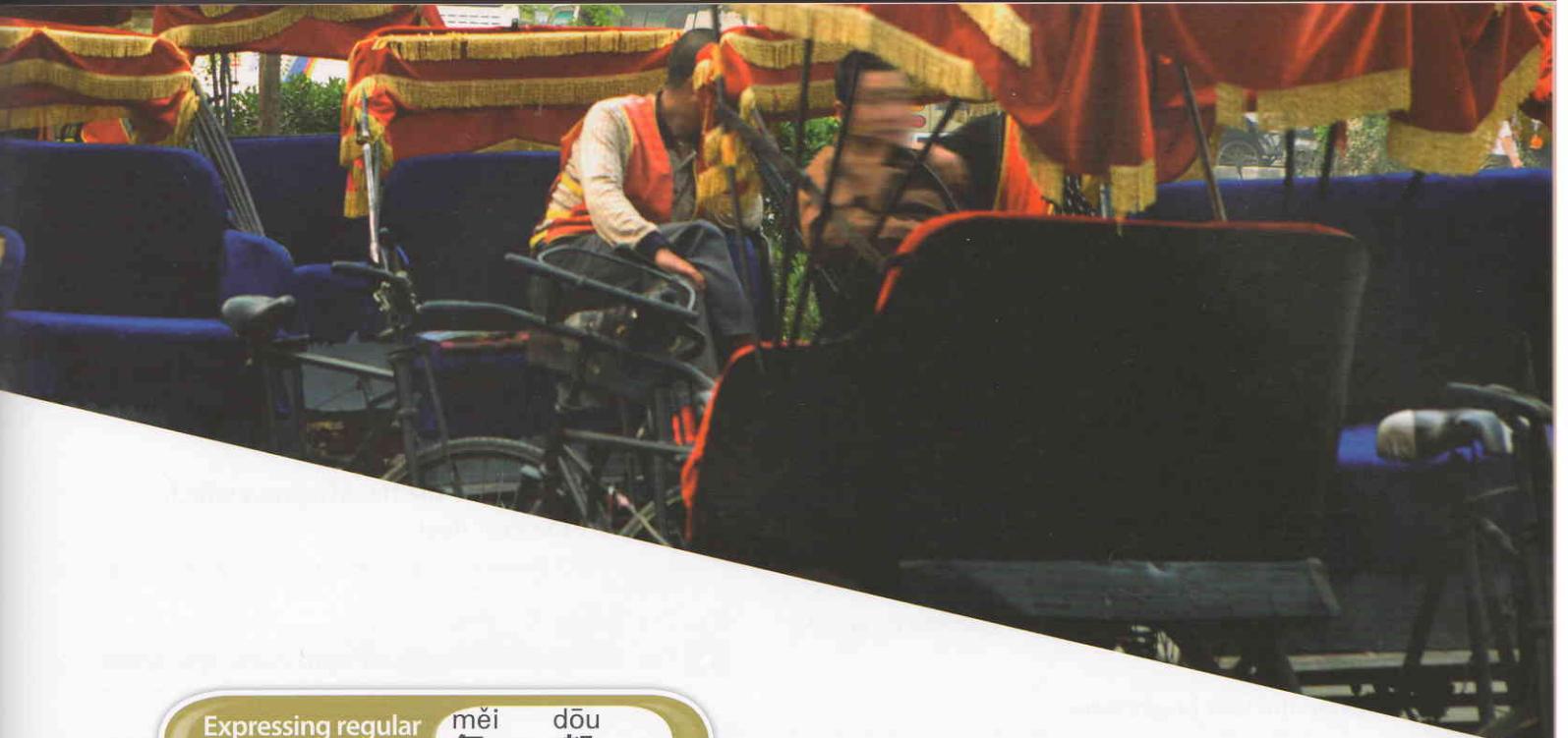
3 **或者** can only be used in statements.

2 Write answers to the questions using **或者 and the words in brackets.**

1 假期你打算做什么? (旅行、工作)

2 马克想学什么? (京剧、网球)

Turn to page 170 for grammar reference.



Expressing regular events with

měi 每 dōu 都

1 Look at the sentences.

Adverbial (Time)	Subject	Adverbial (Time)	Predicate		
			Adverb	Verb	Complement / Object
Wǒ 我	měi nián 每年	dōu 都	qù 去	lǚxíng 旅行。	
Měi nián 每年	wǒ 我		dōu 都	qù 去	lǚxíng 旅行。
	Shǐdifū 史蒂夫	měi gè 每个 zhōumò 周末	dōu 都	kàn 看	diànyǐng 电影。
Měi gè 每个 zhōumò 周末	Shǐdifū 史蒂夫		dōu 都	kàn 看	diànyǐng 电影。
	Mǎkè 马克	měi nián 每年 jiàqī 假期	dōu 都	huí 回	jiā 家。
Měi nián 每年 jiàqī 假期	Mǎkè 马克		dōu 都	huí 回	jiā 家。

Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 每 都 indicates regular events.
- 2 都 can appear before the adverbial time phrase.
- 3 The subject of the sentence can appear before or after the adverbial time phrase.

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1 měi gè Mǎkè dǎ lánqiú Xīngqīsān
每个 / 马克 / 打 篮球 / 星期三 /

dōu 都 /。

2 měi tiān xué Zhōngwén dōu Shǐdifū
每天 / 学 / 中文 / 都 / 史蒂夫 /
shàngwǔ 上午 /。

► Turn to page 171 for grammar reference.

LESSON | 3

Communication activity

1 Work in two groups.

Group A: You work in a travel agency which specializes in action-packed holidays.

Group B: You and your family and/or friends want to go on a package tour to China. You want an active and interesting holiday.

Look at the three package tours. Prepare or answer questions about:

- when the tour begins/ends
- the kinds of activities/places of interest
- transport to and around the place

2 Talk to as many travel agents or potential customers as possible.

3 Group B vote for the travel agency which offers the best deal.

► Turn to pages 155 and 161 for more speaking practice.

Cultural Corner

Chinese kung fu

Chinese martial arts, popularly known in English as kung fu, form one of the best-known examples of traditional Chinese culture. The principles of kung fu were inspired by various Chinese philosophies, as well as myths and legends, and the traits of animals. Some training styles focus on the mind, or “qi” power, and are called “internal”, while others concentrate on improving muscle and cardiovascular fitness and are labelled “external”. Even though kung fu is often seen in films and literature, and practised by millions, it takes many years of study, and only a few highly trained people truly master kung fu.

Xiānggǎng de Zhōngguó yīnyuè hé yìshù
香港 的 中国 音乐 和 艺术!

★ xué Zhōngguó yīnyuè
学 中国 音乐!

★ xué shūfǎ
学 书法!

★ chī Zhōngcān
吃 中餐 !

Shàolín sì gōngfu
少林寺 功夫!

- xué gōngfu 学 功夫!
- páshān 爬山!
- yóulǎn jǐngdiǎn 游览 景点 !

Nèiměnggǔ zhìyuànzhě xiàlìngyíng
内蒙古 志愿者 夏令营

- bāngzhù háizimen xué Yīngyǔ 帮助 孩子们 学 英语!
- hé háizimen yìqǐ yùndòng pīngpāngqiú zúqiú 和 孩子们 一起 运动 (乒乓球、足球) !
- yóulǎn jǐngdiǎn 游览 景点 !

Character writing

These are two common radicals in Chinese. Do you know any other characters with the same radicals?

Radicals	Meaning	Examples
⺮	bamboo	篮、算
禾	grain	利、种

- 1 Look at the characters and identify the radicals.

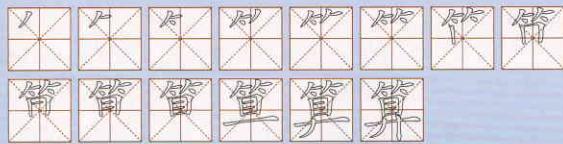
笔 租 箱 程

- 2 Match the words with the meanings.

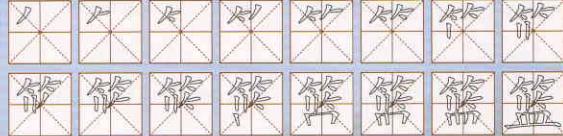
- | | |
|------|--------------|
| 1 和 | a plan |
| 2 篮球 | b Hong Kong |
| 3 打算 | c and |
| 4 香港 | d basketball |

- 3 Trace the characters in the boxes.

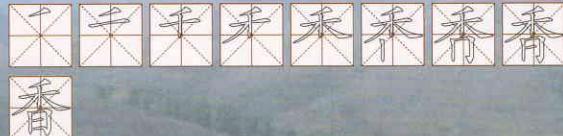
算



篮



香



和



Review and practice

- 1 Circle the odd word out.

- | | | |
|------|----------|----|
| 1 每天 | měi tiān | 每天 |
| 2 或者 | huòzhě | 还是 |
| 3 旅行 | lǚxíng | 打算 |
| | | 想 |

- 2 Complete the sentences with 或者 or 还是.

- | | |
|-------------------------|--|
| 1 马克 _____ 永民 都可以。 | Mǎkè Yǒngmǐn dōu kěyǐ |
| 2 你想 听音乐会 _____ 看 电影? | Nǐ xiǎng tīng yīnyuèhuì _____ kàn diànyǐng |
| 3 他叫马永 _____ 马克? | Tā jiào Mǎ Yǒng _____ Mǎkè? |
| 4 我们下午去打篮球 _____ 乒乓球 吧。 | Wǒmen xiàwǔ qù dǎ lánqíu _____ pīngpāngqiú bā! |

- 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

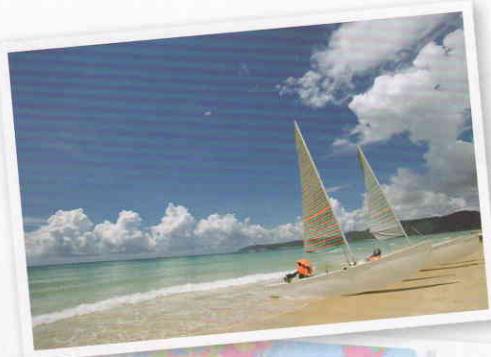
- | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 打算 / 旅行 / 王玉 / 去 /。 | dǎsuān lǚxíng Wáng Yù qù |
| 2 每个 / 回家 / 他 / 都 / 假期 /。 | měigè huí jiā tā dū jiàqī |
| 3 只 / 一个 / 去 / 我 / 地方 / 可以 /。 | zhǐ yī gè qù wǒ dìfang kěyǐ |
| 4 上海 / 她 / 喜欢 / 最 / 去 /。 | Shànghǎi tā xǐhuān zuì qù |



Vocabulary extension

Check the activities you would like to do during the summer holiday. Think about the places you would like to go to.

- 实习 shíxí work as an intern
- 打工 dǎgōng do part-time work
- 野营 yěyíng go camping
- 做 志愿者 zuò zhìyuànzhě work as a volunteer



Now work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about your activities.



Vocabulary list

打算	dǎsuan	v.	plan
或者	huòzhě	conj.	or (in a statement)
回	huí	v.	go back
别	bié	adv.	do not
地方	dìfang	n.	place
新加坡	Xīnjiāpō	n.	Singapore
香港	Xiānggǎng	n.	Hong Kong
那么	nàme	conj.	then, so
飞机	fēijī	n.	aeroplane
以后	yǐhòu	n.	after
京剧	jīngjù	n.	Beijing opera
今年	jīnnián	n.	this year
年	nián	n.	year
好玩	hǎowán	adj.	fun
说	shuō	v.	say
只	zhǐ	adv.	only
觉得	juéde	v.	think, feel

班	bān	measure word	
从	cóng	prep.	from
西安	Xī'ān	n.	Xi'an
应该	yīnggāi	modal v.	should
兵马俑	Bīngmǎyōng	n.	Terracotta Warriors
漂亮	piàoliang	adj.	pretty
城市	chéngshì	n.	city
千	qiān	num.	thousand
历史	lìshǐ	n.	history
主意	zhǔyi	n.	idea
广州	Guǎngzhōu	n.	Guangzhou
实习	shíxí	v.	work as an intern
打工	dǎgōng	v.	do part-time work
野营	yěyíng	v.	go camping
志愿者	zhìyuànzhě	n.	volunteer

Review 3

Vocabulary

1 Circle the odd word out.

1 足球	zúqiú	网球场	wǎngqiú	篮球	lánqiú	游泳	yóuyǒng
2 东边	dōngbian	前边	qiánbian	北边	běibian	南边	nánbian
3 书店	shūdiàn	银行	yínháng	邮局	yóujú	附近	fùjìn
4 飞机	fēijī	火车	huochē	地铁	dìtiè	地方	dìfang

2 Look at the phrases in the box.

打篮球	dǎ lánqiú	坐 公共汽车	zuò gōnggòng qìchē
学跳舞	xué tiào wǔ	去 上海	qù Shànghǎi

Now choose the correct verb to go with the nouns.

1 地铁	dìtiè	2 网球	wǎngqiú	3 北京	Běijīng	4 京剧	jīngjù
------	-------	------	---------	------	---------	------	--------

3 Choose the correct pinyin for the words.

1 房子	a fángzǐ	b fángzi	c fánzi
2 旅行	a lǚxíng	b lǚxíng	c lǚqíng
3 好玩	a hǎowén	b hǎowǎn	c hǎowán
4 运动	a yùndòng	b yùdòng	c yūndòng
5 怎么	a zěnme	b zènme	c zénme
6 觉得	a juède	b quéde	c juéde

4 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

fùjìn	bù cuò	xǐhuan
附近	不错	喜欢

- Wáng Yù míngtiān wǒmen _____ qu pásān ba.
1 王玉，明天我们 _____ 去爬山吧。
- Qǐngwèn _____ yǒu dìtièzhàn ma.
2 请问，_____ 有地铁站吗？
- Mǎkè nǐ dǎ lánqiú ma.
3 马克，你 _____ 打篮球吗？
- nǐ dǎsuan zuò shénme
4 _____ 你打算做 什么？
- Zhèr de fāngbiàn ma.
5 这儿的 _____ 方便 吗？
- Shànghǎi shì yī gè hěn _____ de dìfang
6 上海 是一个很 _____ 的地方。

Grammar

1 Write questions for the answers using the words in the box.

zěnme ma shénme nǎli
怎么 吗 什么 哪里

1 A: _____

Wǒ zhù zài Gōngyuán Lù sìshísān hào
B: 我住在公园路 43 号。

2 A: _____

Wǒ de diànhuà hào ma shì
B: 我的电话号码是 95282664。

3 A: _____

Shì tā shì wǒ jiějie
B: 是，她是我的姐姐。

4 A: _____

Wǒmen zuò dìtiè qù
B: 我们坐地铁去。

2 Match the parts to complete the sentences.

Gōngyuán Lù zài yínháng de qiánbian
1 公园 路在 银行 的 前边,

Fángzi zài dìtiězhàn fùjìn
2 房子在 地铁站 附近,

Wǒ jiā fùjìn yǒu gōnggòng qìchēzhàn
3 我家附近有 公共 汽车站,

Wǒ xǐhuān gòuwù
4 我 喜欢 购物,

Wǒ xǐhuān chī Zhōngcān
5 我 喜欢 吃 中餐 ,

Tā zǎoshang yào pǎobù
6 他 早上 要 跑步,

Wǒmen zuò dìtiě qù
7 我们 坐 地铁 去

tā xǐhuān chī Hánuguócài
a 她 喜欢 吃 韩国菜。

xiàwǔ yào tī zúqiú
b 下午 要 踢 足球。

yóujú de hòubian
c 邮局 的 后边。

tā xǐhuān zuò yùndòng
d 她 喜欢 做 运动。

dànshì méiyǒu dìtiězhàn
e 但是 没有 地铁站。

háishì zuò chūzūchē qù
f 还是 坐 出租车 去?

jiāotōng hěn fāngbiàn
g 交通 很 方便。

3 Complete the conversation with the words in the box.

ba

qù

Nǐ xiǎng

Wǒ bù huì yóuyǒng

Nàme

Wǒ

Hǎo

Wǒmen

Wǒmen

A:

hǎo ma

bù huì

yóuyǒng ma

Wǒ

那么

我们

好,

我们

我们

我们

hái shì

dǎ

打

4 Write sentences about what you can and cannot do using the words in the box.

tiào wǔ
跳舞
huá xuě
滑雪

bèng jí
蹦极
dǎ lánqiú
打篮球

chōng láng
冲浪
pāi zhào
拍照

1 _____

2 _____

3 _____

4 _____

5 _____

6 _____

Integrated skills

1 Listen to the conversation and complete the table.

dìdiǎn 地点 Places	jùlí 距离 Distance
gòuwù zhōngxīn 购物中心	
cāntīng 餐厅	
jīchǎng 机场	

Now listen again and check the true statements.

Ānnà hé Wáng Yù yào qù Guìlín lǚxíng

1 安娜和王玉要去桂林旅行。

Ānnà bù xiǎng qù gòuwù zhōngxīn tā xiǎng

2 安娜不想去购物中心，她想去超市。

Tāmen dǎsuan qù Rìběn cāntīng

3 她们打算去日本餐厅。

Cāntīng fùjìn yǒu yīgè fúzhuāng shìchǎng

4 餐厅附近有一个服装市场。

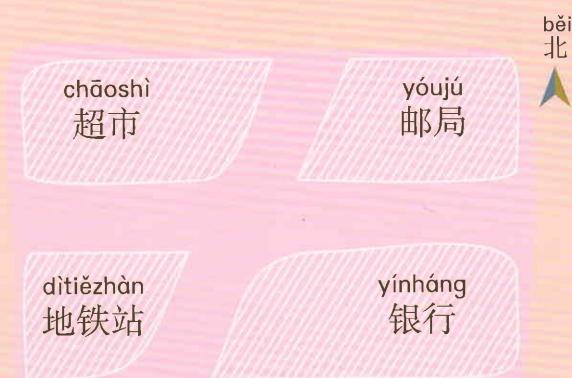
Ānnà dǎsuan zuò chūzūchē qù jīchǎng

5 安娜打算坐出租车去机场。

Tāmen zuò gōnggòng qìchē qù jīchǎng

6 她们坐公共汽车去机场。

2 Read the map and answer the questions.



Yóujú zài nǎli Dìtièzhàn ne
1 邮局在哪里？地铁站呢？



běi
北

Dàxué zài nǎli
2 大学在哪里？



běi
北



dàxué
大学

Gōnggòngqìchēzhàn zài nǎli Chāoshì ne
3 公共汽车站在哪里？超市呢？

3 Read the passage.

Mǎkè xǐhuān yùndòng Tā xǐhuān pǎobù
马克喜欢运动。他喜欢跑步、

dǎ lánqiú tī zúqiú hái xǐhuān yóuyǒng
打篮球、踢足球，还喜欢游泳，

dànshì tā bù xǐhuān dǎ pīngpāngqiú Mǎkè
但是他不喜欢打乒乓球。马克

měitiān dōu zuò yùndòng Zhège zhōumò tā
每天都做运动。这个周末，他

dǎsuan hé Shídīfū yīqǐ qù páshān ránhòu qù
打算和史蒂夫一起去爬山，然后去

cāntīng chī wǎnfàn Mǎkè xǐhuān chī Zhōngcān
餐厅吃晚饭。马克喜欢吃中餐，

dànshì Shídīfū xǐhuān chī Yìdàilicài Wǎnshàng
但是史蒂夫喜欢吃意大利菜。晚上

tāmen dǎsuan qù kàn diànyǐng
他们打算去看电影。

Now answer the questions.

Enjoy Chinese

Mǎkè xǐhuan shénme yùndòng

1 马克 喜欢 什么 运动?

Mǎkè bù xǐhuan shénme yùndòng

2 马克 不喜欢 什么 运动?

Mǎkè měitiān dōu zuò shénme

3 马克 每天 都 做 什么?

Mǎkè zhège zhōumò dǎsuan zuò shénme

4 马克 这个 周末 打算 做 什么?

Shídīfū xǐhuan chī shénme cài

5 史蒂夫 喜欢 吃 什么 菜?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

fùjìn yóujú méiyǒu

1 附近 / 邮局 / 没有 /。

Wáng Yù qù lǚxíng dǎsuan huíjā huòzhě

2 王玉 / 去旅行 / 打算 / 回家 / 或者 /。

xǐhuan Mǎkè dǎ lángqiú yóuyǒng háishi

3 喜欢 / 马克 / 打篮球 / 游泳 / 还是 /?

tāmen zuò gōnggòng qìchē qù zuò dìtiě qù

4 他们 / 坐 公共 汽车去 / 坐 地铁去 /

háishi

还是 /?

dōu měi gè jiàqī huíjā tā

5 都 / 每个 假期 / 回家 / 他 /。

xué

学

learn

dàxué

大学

university

zhōngxué

中学

middle school

xiǎoxué

小学

primary school

xuéxiào

学校

school

xuésheng

学生

student

学



→ 學 → 學 → 學 → 學 → 學

The original meaning of 学 is to learn or accept knowledge. Its ancient shape looks like a child learning mathematics in a house. The top part represents two hands doing mathematics, while the bottom represents a child in a house. 𠂇 is two hands. 乚 indicates the roof of a house. 亼 refers to the things being counted, and 亻 is the child.



Language support

Numbers

0	líng 零	12	shí'ér 十二
1	yī 一	15	shíwǔ 十五
2	èr 二	20	èrshí 二十
3	sān 三	30	sānshí 三十
4	sì 四	40	sishí 四十
5	wǔ 五	100	yībǎi 一百
6	liù 六	150	yībǎi wǔshí 一百五十
7	qī 七	200	èrbǎi 二百
8	bā 八	255	èrbǎi wǔshíwǔ 二百五十五
9	jiǔ 九	378	sānbǎi qīshíbā 三百七十八
10	shí 十	591	wǔbǎi jiǔshíyī 五百九十一
11	shíyī 十一	1000	yīqiān 一千

Months and days

January	Yīyuè 一月	Monday	Xīngqīyī 星期一
February	Èryuè 二月	Tuesday	Xīngqī' èr 星期二
March	Sānyuè 三月	Wednesday	Xīngqīsān 星期三
April	Sìyuè 四月	Thursday	Xīngqīsì 星期四
May	Wǔyuè 五月	Friday	Xīngqīwǔ 星期五
June	Liùyuè 六月	Saturday	Xīngqīliù 星期六
July	Qīyuè 七月	Sunday	Xīngqīrì tiān 星期日 / 天
August	Bāyuè 八月		
September	Jiǔyuè 九月		
October	Shíyuè 十月		
November	Shíiyuè 十一月		
December	Shí' èryuè 十二月		

Measure words

Measure word	Pinyin	Main Use	Example
个	gè	individual things, people	yī gè rén 一个人
把	bǎ	objects that can be held	yī bǎ dāo 一把刀
杯	bēi	cups/glasses	yī bēi jiǔ 一杯酒
本	běn	books, magazines, printed matter	yī běn shū 一本书
口	kǒu	people in a family	yī jiā wǔ kǒu rén 一家五口人
双	shuāng	objects that naturally come in pairs	yī shuāng xié 一双鞋

Measure word	Pinyin	Main Use	Example
件	jiàn	clothing	yī jiàn chènshān 一件 衬衫
辆	liàng	wheeled vehicles (cars, bicycles, etc)	yī liàng chē 一辆 车
间	jiān	rooms	yī jiān fángzi 一间 房子
块	kuài	pieces of something	yī kuài shítou 一块 石头
页	yè	pages of a book	yī yè shū 一页 书
些	xiē	unspecified numbers, some	yīxiē xuésheng 一些 学生

Pair work activities for Student A

Unit 1

- 1 Introduce these people to Student B.



1 Lǐ Qīng
李青



Mary



3 Jane



4 Steve

Tā shì
他是……
Tā shì
她是……

Tā jiào
他叫……
Tā jiào
她叫……

- 2 Listen to Student B and write the people's names.



5



6



7



8

- 3 Imagine you are at a friend's party. Greet each other, and introduce yourself. You can pretend to be one of the people above.

Unit 2

- 1 Ask Student B these people's nationalities.



1



2



3



4

Tā Tā shì nǎ guó rén
他/她是哪国人?

Tā Tā shì rén ma
他/她是……人吗?

- 2 Tell Student B these people's nationalities.



5

Měiguórén
美国人



6

Fǎguórén
法国人



7

Jiānádàrén
加拿大人



8

Déguórén
德国人

Tā Tā shì rén
他/她是……人。

Shì tā tā shì rén
是，他/她是……人。

Bù tā tā bù shì rén
不，他/她不是……人。

Tā Tā shì rén
他/她是……人。

- 3 Imagine you are at a conference. Greet each other and tell each other where you are from. Introduce the people above to your partner.

Unit 3

1 Create identities for Kate and her family. Include:

míngzì
• 名字

nǎ guó rén
• 哪国人

gōngzuò
• 工作

zhù zài nǎlǐ
• 住在哪里

bàba
爸爸

dìdi
弟弟



māma
妈妈
Kate

2 Answer Student B's questions about Kate and her family.

3 Ask Student B about Li Na and her family. Include:

míngzì
• 名字

nǎ guó rén
• 哪国人

gōngzuò
• 工作

zhù zài nǎlǐ
• 住在哪里

Tā bàba zuò shénme gōngzuò
她爸爸做什么工作?

Lǐ Nà de bàba jiào shénme míngzì
李娜的爸爸叫什么名字?

Tā shì nǎ guó rén
他是哪国人?

Tā zhù zài nǎlǐ
他住在哪里?



Unit 4

1 Create a Sina profile for Jane.

Sina 新浪博客 博客首页 微博：董火交流工具 看明星动态 登录 注册 没博文 搜索

我的资料

Jane

xìngmíng
姓名：

guójí
国籍：

chūshēngdì
出生地：

diànzǐ yóuxiāng
电子邮箱：

zui xǐhuan de dòngwù
最喜欢的动物：

zui xǐhuan de yùndòngyuán
最喜欢的运动员：

zui xǐhuan de yānyuán
最喜欢的演员：

我的档案

Jane

性名：
国籍：
出生地：
电子邮箱：
最喜好的动物：
最喜欢的运动员：
最喜欢的演员：

博客等级：22
博客积分：806
博客访问：5,631,496

2 Answer Student B's questions about the profile that you have created.

3 Ask Student B about the profile that he/she has created. Write the information here.

Sina 新浪博客 博客首页 微博：董火交流工具 看明星动态 登录 注册 没博文 搜索

我的资料

David

xìngmíng
姓名：

guójí
国籍：

chūshēngdì
出生地：

diànzǐ yóuxiāng
电子邮箱：

zui xǐhuan de dòngwù
最喜欢的动物：

zui xǐhuan de yùndòngyuán
最喜欢的运动员：

zui xǐhuan de yānyuán
最喜欢的演员：

我的档案

David

性名：
国籍：
出生地：
电子邮箱：
最喜好的动物：
最喜欢的运动员：
最喜欢的演员：

博客等级：22
博客积分：806
博客访问：5,631,496

Unit 5

- 1 Fill in the form for a job interview.

xìngmíng
姓名 : _____
niánlíng
年龄 : _____
guójí
国籍: _____

diànhuà hào mǎ
电话 号码 : _____
shǒujī hào mǎ
手机 号码: _____
dizhǐ
地址: _____
diànzǐ yóuxiāng
电子 邮箱: _____

- 2 Answer Student B's questions using your own form.

- 3 Interview Student B for a job. Ask questions and complete the form.

xìngmíng
姓名: _____
niánlíng
年龄: _____
guójí
国籍: _____

diànhuà hào mǎ
电话 号码: _____
shǒujī hào mǎ
手机 号码: _____
dizhǐ
地址: _____
diànzǐ yóuxiāng
电子 邮箱: _____

Unit 6

- Ask Student B questions. Then complete the table and check the true statements.

Questions	Student B ...
Nǐ de shēngrì shì 你的 生日 是 jǐ yuè jǐ hào 几月几号 ? _____	Tā Tā de shēngrì shì 他/她的 生日 是 _____。 Tā Tā suì 他/她 _____ 岁。 _____
_____	Tā Tā de diànhuà hào mǎ shì 他/她的 电话 号码 是 _____。 _____
_____	Tā Tā de diànzǐ yóuxiāng shì 他/她的 电子 邮箱 是 _____。 _____
_____	Tā Tā xǐhuan chī Fǎguócài 他/她 喜欢 吃 法国菜。 <input type="checkbox"/>
_____	Tā Tā Xīngqītiān bù xué Zhōngwén 他/她 星期天 不学 中文。 <input type="checkbox"/>
_____	Tā Tā Xīngqīliù qù kàn diànyǐng 他/她 星期六 去看 电影 。 <input type="checkbox"/>
_____	Tā Tā bù xǐhuan Xīngqīyī 他/她 不喜欢 星期一。 <input type="checkbox"/>
_____	Tā Tā Xīngqīwǔ wǎnshàng qù pàiduì 他/她 星期五 晚上 去派对。 <input type="checkbox"/>



Unit 7

- 1 Answer the questions with your own information.
Write your answers in the Student A column.

Questions	Student A	Student B
1 Nǐ Xīngqīyī zǎoshang jǐ diǎn 你 星期一 早 上 几 点 qǐchuáng 起 床 (get up)?		
2 Nǐ Xīngqītiān zǎoshang jǐ diǎn 你 星 期 天 早 上 几 点 qǐchuáng 起 床 ?		
3 Nǐ Xīngqījǐ zuò yùndòng 你 星 期 几 做 运 动 ?		
4 Nǐ shénme shíjiān zuò yùndòng 你 什 么 时 间 做 运 动 ?		
5 Nǐ zuì xǐhuan chī shénme 你 最 喜 欢 吃 什 么 ?		
6 Nǐ qù tīng yīnyuèhuì ma 你 去 听 音 乐 会 吗 ?		
7 Nǐ zuì xǐhuan de yānyuán shì shéi 你 最 喜 欢 的 演 员 是 谁 ?		
8 Nǐ yǒu bólè ma 你 有 博 客 吗 ?		
9 Nǐ shénme shíjiān xiě bólè 你 什 么 时 间 写 博 客 ?		

Unit 8

- 1 Decide the colour and price for the following clothes.



- 2 Answer Student B's questions about your clothes.

- 3 Ask Student B about these clothes items:



Nǐ yǒu ma
你 有 吗 ?



Nǐ yǒu shénme yánse de?
你 有 什 么 颜 色 的 ?

Duōshao qián
多 少 钱 ?

Piányi yídiǎnr ba
便 宜 一 点 儿 吧 。



- 2 Ask Student B these questions and write his/her answers in the Student B column.

- 3 Compare the answers. How similar are your habits?

Unit 9

- 1 Ask Student B directions to these places and write on the map:

gōngyuán
公园

xǐshǒujīān
洗手间

chāoshì
超市

xuéxiào
学校

běi
北



- 2 Give Student B directions to the places he/she wants to go to.



Unit 10

- 1 Look carefully at the photos. You have 30 seconds to memorize as many of the details as you can.



- 2 Close your books. Take turns to describe the photos from memory. Write down your observations.

Zhàopiàn li yǒu huángsè de chūzūchē

A: 照片里有黄色的出租车……。

Zhàopiàn li yǒu

B: 照片里有……。

- 3 Look at the photos. Compare who has the most correct observations.



Unit 11

- 1 Complete the sentences about yourself. Write three true sentences and three false sentences.

Wǒ xǐhuān
1 我 喜欢 _____。 (sports)

Wǒ kànɡuo bǐsài
2 我 看过 _____ 比赛。

Wǒ měi xīngqī dōu
3 我 每 星期 都 _____。 (sports)

Wǒ bù xǐhuān
4 我 不 喜欢 _____。 (sports)

Wǒ qùguò
5 我 去过 _____。 (place)

Wǒ huì shuō
6 我 会 说 _____。 (language)

- 2 Exchange sentences with Student B. Guess which of his/her sentences are false. Write a cross (✗) after the false sentences.

- 3 Compare the results to see who got more correct guesses.

Unit 12

- 1 Ask Student B questions and complete the holiday plan.

Jiàqī nǐ dǎsuan zuò shénme
假期 你 打算 做 什么?

Holiday plan

	Name	Activity
1	Lǐ Hóng 李 红	
2	Jiéfū 杰夫	qù páshān 去 爬山。
3	Zhāng Míng 张 明	
4	Lín dà 琳 达	xué chōnglàng 学 冲浪。
5	Mǎtè 马 特	
6	Lìlì 丽 丽	gēn jiějie yīqǐ qù nǎinai jiā 跟 姐姐 一起 去 奶奶 家。
7	Bēisī 贝 丝	
8	Fēibǐ 菲 比	xiān shíxí ránhòu huíjiā 先 实习，然 后 回 家。

- 2 Answer Student B's questions using the holiday plan above.

Pair work activities for Student B

Unit 1

- 1 Listen to Student A and write the people's names.



1



2



3



4

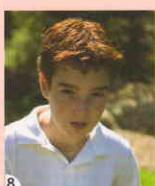
- 2 Introduce these people to Student A.



Jack Hey

Wáng Péng
王 鵬

Emma



Matt

Tā shì
他是
Tā shì
她是Tā jiào
他叫
Tā jiào
她叫

- 3 Imagine you are at a friend's party. Greet each other, and introduce yourself. You can pretend to be one of the people above.

Unit 2

- 1 Tell Student A these people's nationalities.



1



2



3



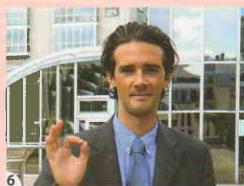
4

Rìběnrén
日本人Yìndùrén
印度人Àodàliyàrén
澳大利亚人Yīngguórén
英国人Tā tā shì rén
他/她是人。Shì tā tā shì rén
是，他/她是人。Bù tā tā bù shì rén Tā tā shì rén
不，他/她不是人。他/她是人。

- 2 Ask Student A these people's nationalities.



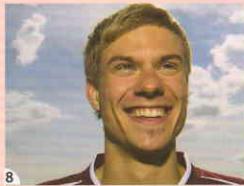
5



6



7



8

Tā Tā shì nǎguó rén
他/她是哪国人？Tā Tā shì rén ma
他/她是人吗？

- 3 Imagine you are at a conference. Greet each other and tell each other where you are from. Introduce the people above to your partner.

Unit 3

1 Create identities for Li Na and her family. Include:

míngzì
• 名字

gōngzuò
• 工作

nǎ guó rén
• 哪 国 人

zhù zài nǎlǐ
• 住 在 哪 里



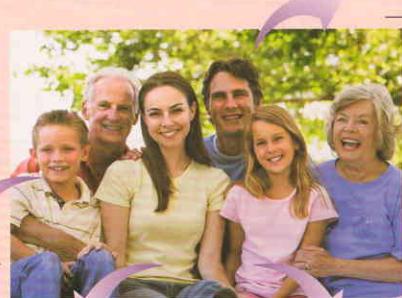
2 Ask Student A about Kate and her family. Include:

míngzì
• 名字

gōngzuò
• 工作

nǎ guó rén
• 哪 国 人

zhù zài nǎlǐ
• 住 在 哪 里



de bàba jiào
Kate 的爸爸叫
shénme míngzì
什么 名字?

Tā bàba zuò shénme gōngzuò
她爸爸做 什么 工作?

Tā shì nǎ guó rén
他是哪 国 人?

Tā zhù zài nǎlǐ
他住 在 哪 里?

Unit 4

1 Create a Sina profile for David.

2 Ask Student A about the profile that he/she has created. Write the information here.

3 Answer Student A's questions about the profile that you have created.

3 Answer Student A's questions about Li Na and her family.

Unit 5

1 Fill in the form for a job interview.

xìngmíng
姓名 : _____
niánlíng
年龄 : _____
guójí
国籍: _____

diànhuà hào mǎ
电话 号码: _____
shǒujī hào mǎ
手机 号码: _____
dìzhǐ
地址: _____
diànzǐ yóuxiāng
电子 邮箱: _____

2 Interview Student A for a job. Ask questions and complete the form.

xìngmíng
姓名: _____
niánlíng
年龄: _____
guójí
国籍: _____

diànhuà hào mǎ
电话 号码: _____
shǒujī hào mǎ
手机 号码: _____
dìzhǐ
地址: _____
diànzǐ yóuxiāng
电子 邮箱: _____

3 Answer Student A's questions using your own form.

Unit 6

Ask Student A questions. Then complete the table and check the true statements.

Questions	Student A ...
Nǐ de shēngrì shì 你的 生日 是 jǐ yuè jǐ hào 几月几号 ? _____	Tā Tā de shēngrì shì 他/她的 生日 是 _____。 Tā Tā suì 他/她 _____ 岁。 <input type="checkbox"/>
_____	Tā Tā de diànhuà hào mǎ shì 他/她的 电话 号码 是 _____。 <input type="checkbox"/>
_____	Tā Tā de diànzǐ yóuxiāng shì 他/她的 电子 邮箱 是 _____。 <input type="checkbox"/>
_____	Tā Tā xǐhuān chī Fǎguócài 他/她 喜欢 吃 法国菜。 <input type="checkbox"/>
_____	Tā Tā Xīngqītiān bù xué Zhōngwén 他/她 星期天 不学 中文。 <input type="checkbox"/>
_____	Tā Tā Xīngqīliù qù kàn diànyǐng 他/她 星期六 去 看 电影。 <input type="checkbox"/>
_____	Tā Tā bù xǐhuān Xīngqīyī 他/她 不 喜欢 星期一。 <input type="checkbox"/>
_____	Tā Tā Xīngqīwǔ wǎnshàng qù pàiduì 他/她 星期五 晚上 去 派对。 <input type="checkbox"/>



Unit 7

- 1 Answer the questions with your own information.
Write your answers in the Student B column.

Questions	Student A	Student B
1 Nǐ Xīngqīyī zǎoshang jǐ diǎn 你 星期一 早 上 几 点 qǐchuáng 起 床 (get up)?		
2 Nǐ Xīngqītiān zǎoshang jǐ diǎn 你 星期 天 早 上 几 点 qǐchuáng 起 床 ?		
3 Nǐ Xīngqījī zuò yùndòng 你 星 期 几 做 运 动 ?		
4 Nǐ shénme shíjiān zuò yùndòng 你 什 么 时 间 做 运 动 ?		
5 Nǐ zuì xǐhuān chī shénme 你 最 喜 欢 吃 什 么 ?		
6 Nǐ qù tīng yīnyuèhuì ma 你 去 听 音 乐 会 吗 ?		
7 Nǐ zuì xǐhuān de yǎnyuán shì shéi 你 最 喜 欢 的 演 员 是 谁 ?		
8 Nǐ yǒu bōkè ma 你 有 博 客 吗 ?		
9 Nǐ shénme shíjiān xiě bōkè 你 什 么 时 间 写 博 客 ?		

- 2 Ask Student A these questions and write his/her answers in the Student A column.

- 3 Compare the answers. How similar are your habits?

Unit 8

- 1 Decide the colour and price for the following clothes items.



- 2 Ask Student A about these clothes:



Nǐ yǒu ma
你 有 吗 ?

Nǐ yǒu shénme yánse de
你 有 什 么 颜 色 的 ?

Duōshao qián
多 少 钱 ?

Piányi yīdiǎnr ba
便 宜 一 点 儿 吧 .

- 3 Answer Student A's questions about your clothes items.

Unit 9

běi
北

- 1 Give Student A directions to the places he/she wants to go to.



- 2 Ask Student A directions to these places and write on the map above:

gòuwù zhōngxīn
购物中心

yínháng
银行

yóujú
邮局

shūdiàn
书店



Unit 10

- 1 Look carefully at the photos. You have 30 seconds to memorize as many of the details as you can.



- 2 Close your books. Take turns to describe the photos from memory. Write down your observations.

Zhàopiàn li yǒu jǐ gè rén qí

A: 照片里有几个人骑
zìxíngchē
自行车……。

Zhàopiàn li yǒu

B: 照片里有……。

- 3 Look at the photos. Compare who has the most correct observations.



Unit 11

- 1 Complete the sentences about yourself. Write three true sentences and three false sentences.

Wǒ xǐhuān

1 我 喜欢 _____。 (sports)

Wǒ kànɡuo

2 我 看过 _____ 比赛。

Wǒ měi xīngqī dōu

3 我 每 星期 都 _____。 (sports)

Wǒ bù xǐhuān

4 我 不 喜欢 _____。 (sports)

Wǒ qùguo

5 我 去过 _____。 (place)

Wǒ huì shuō

6 我 会 说 _____。 (language)

- 2 Exchange sentences with Student A. Guess which of his/her sentences are false. Write a cross (✗) after the false sentences.

- 3 Compare the results to see who got more correct guesses.

Unit 12

- 1 Answer Student A's questions using the holiday plan.

Holiday plan

	Name	Activity
1	Lǐ Hóng 李 红	tīng yīnyuèhūi 听 音乐会。
2	Jiéfū 杰 夫	
3	Zhāng Míng 张 明	qù Xiānggǎng lǚxíng 去 香港 旅行。
4	Lín dà 琳 达	
5	Mǎtè 马 特	zuò zhìyuànzhě 做 志愿者。
6	Lìlì 丽 丽	
7	Bēisī 贝 丝	qù Guìlín lǚxíng 去 桂林 旅行。
8	Fēibǐ 菲 比	

- 2 Ask Student A questions and complete the holiday plan above.

Jiàqī nǐ dǎsuan zuò shénme
假期 你 打算 做 什么?

Grammar reference

Unit 1

Word order of Chinese sentences (I)

A simple Chinese sentence is made up of two parts, the subject and the predicate. The predicate usually consists of a verb and an object.

Subject	Predicate	
	Verb	Object
Wǒ 我	shì 是	Wáng Yù 王玉
I am Wang Yu.		

This word order of subject-verb-object is similar to English.

jìao xìng shì Verbs 叫 姓 是

When we use 叫 and 姓 as verbs, an object must follow.

Subject	Verb	Surname
Wǒ 我	xìng 姓	Zhāng 张。
My surname is Zhang.		
Tā 他	xìng 姓	Lǐ 李。
His surname is Li.		

Subject	Verb	Full name
Tā 他	jiào 叫	Zhāng Xiǎoxiao 张 小小。
He is called Zhang Xiaoxiao.		
Tā 他	jiào 叫	Lǐ Lì 李力。
He is called Li Li.		

不 can be used before 叫 and 姓 to express the negative form.

Wǒ bù xìng Wáng
我不姓王。 My surname is not Wang.

Wǒ bù jiào Lǐ Lì
我不叫李力。 I am not called Li Li.

是, the verb "be", is used to link two nominal expressions that refer to the same person or object.

Subject	Verb	Object / Noun
Wǒ 我	shì 是	lǎoshī 老师。
I am a teacher.		
Tā 他	shì 是	Zhāng Míng 张 明。
He is Zhang Ming.		

ne Questions ending with 呢

The question particle 呢 is placed after a noun or pronoun to form a follow-up question meaning "how/what about". The speaker and the listener are assumed to know what the question refers to.

Preceding sentence	Follow-up question
Wǒ xìng Zhāng 我姓张,	nǐ ne 你呢?
My surname is Zhang, what about you?	
Tā xìng Zhāng 他姓张,	tā ne 她呢?
His surname is Zhang, what about her?	
Nǐ shì xuésheng 你是学生,	tā ne 他呢?
You are a student, what about him?	
Wǒ shì xuésheng 我是学生,	Zhāng Míng ne 张明呢?
I'm a student, what about Zhang Ming?	

Unit 2

ma Yes/no questions ending with 吗

吗 is usually used at the end of a declarative sentence to form a yes/no question. The word order remains unchanged.

Preceding sentence	ma	Answer
Nǐ shì Mǎkè 你是马克	ma?	Shì wǒ shì Mǎkè 是, 我是马克。
Are you Mark?		
Tā xìng Lǐ 他姓李	ma?	Shì tā xìng Lǐ 是, 他姓李。
Is his surname Li?		
Nǐ shì xuésheng 你是学生	ma?	Shì wǒ shì xuésheng 是, 我是学生。
Are you a student?		
Tā shì Zhōngguórén 她是中国人	ma?	Bù tā bù shì Zhōngguórén 不, 她不是中国人。
Is she Chinese?		
		No, she is not Chinese.

nǎi nǎ

Questions with interrogative pronoun 哪里 / 哪

哪里 (where) and 哪 (which) are interrogative pronouns. They have the same position in sentences as the answers, that is to say, the word order in the question is the same as in the corresponding statement.

Nǐ zhù zài nǎlǐ
你住在哪里? Where do you live?

Wǒ zhù zài Lúndūn
我住在伦敦。 I live in London.

Nǐ shì nǎguó rén?
你是哪国人? Which country are you from?

Wǒ shì Yīngguórén
我是英国人。 I am British.

也 cannot be used before the subject, nor at the very end of a sentence.

The adverb 都 is similar to 也 in usage.

Subject	Predicate		
	Adverbial	Verb	Object / Noun
Tāmen 她们	dōu 都	shì 是	Yīngguórén 英国人。
They are all British.			
Tāmen 他们	dōu zài yīyuàn 都在医院	gōngzuò 工作。	
They all work at the hospital.			

bù

Negative adverb 不

不 is a negative adverb when it is used alone or before the predicate.

Subject	Adverb	Predicate
Tā 他	bù 不	xìng Zhāng 姓 张。
His surname is not Zhang.		
Wǒ 我	bù 不	shì Yīngguórén 是 英国人。
I'm not British.		

不 can also be used in a rhetorical question to confirm a fact.

Nǐ bù xìng Zhāng ma?
你不姓张吗? Is your surname not Zhang?

Unit 3

yě dōu

Adverbs 也 / 都

The adverb 也 means "also" or "too". It is used after the subject and before the verb.

Subject	Predicate		
	Adverb	Verb	Object / Noun
Wǒ 我	yě 也	xìng 姓	Wáng 王。
My surname is also Wang.			
Tā 他	yě 也	shì 是	xuéshēng 学生。
He is also a student.			

de

Pronouns as modifiers (+的)

Personal pronouns (e.g. 我) followed by the word 的 express possession. When personal pronouns are followed by a kinship term, 的 is often omitted (e.g. 我爸爸).

For persons other than family members, the use of 的 is optional, depending on the closeness of the relationship. It is usually omitted if the relationship is close.

Personal pronoun	de	Noun
wǒ 我	de 的	shū 书
		my book (的 is usually needed for objects.)
wǒ 我	de (的)	bàba 爸爸
		my father (的 is usually omitted for family members.)
tā 她	de (的)	gēge 哥哥
		her elder brother (的 is usually omitted for family members.)
tā 他	de 的	lǎoshī 老师
		his teacher (His relationship with the teacher is distant.)
nǐ 你	de (的)	jia 家
		your home (的 is often omitted before "home", a place where family members live.)

Unit 4

shéi Interrogative pronoun 谁

The interrogative pronoun 谁 can be used at the beginning of a question as the subject.

Subject	Verb	Object
Shéi 谁	shì 是	Mǎkè 马克?
Who is Mark?		
Shéi 谁	shì 是	nǐ de lǎoshī 你的 老师?
Who is your teacher?		

谁 can also be used at the end of a question as the object.

Subject	Verb	Object
Nǐ 你	shì 是	shéi 谁?
Who are you?		
Nǐ 你	zhǎo 找	shéi 谁?
Whom are you looking for?		

When used at the end of a question, 谁 is sometimes equivalent to "whom" in English.

Numbers in Chinese

Chinese numbers use a decimal (base ten) system. There are characters for numbers zero through nine and larger numbers such as tens, hundreds, thousands, etc.

0	zero	líng 零
1	one	yī 一
2	two	èr 二
3	three	sān 三
4	four	sì 四
5	five	wǔ 五
6	six	liù 六
7	seven	qī 七
8	eight	bā 八
9	nine	jiǔ 九
10	ten	shí 十
100	one hundred	bǎi 百
1000	one thousand	qiān 千
10000	ten thousand	wàn 万

The Chinese numbers for twenty, thirty, forty, etc are formed by placing the character for 10 after the characters for 2 to 9. For example, twenty is written as 二十 ("two ten"), thirty is written as 三十 ("three ten"), and forty as 四十 ("four ten").

Chinese numbers such as eleven, thirteen, twenty-one, thirty-two, etc are formed by adding the characters for 1 to 9 after the characters for 10 to 90. For example, eleven is written 十一 ("ten one"), twenty-one is 二十一 ("two ten one"), twenty-two is 二十二 ("two ten two") and thirty-two as 三十二 ("three ten two").

When a zero occurs in the number (except at the end), the character for zero (零) should be used. The number 201 is written 二百零一 ("two hundred zero one").

duō dà

Asking about age using 多大

多大 can be used to ask about someone's age.

Question	Answer
Nǐ duōdà 你多大?	Wǒ èrshíwǔ suì 我二十五岁。
How old are you?	I'm 25 years old.
Mǎkè de mèimei duōdà 马克的妹妹多大?	Tā shíbā suì 她十八岁。
How old is Mark's younger sister?	She's 18 years old.

你多大 can only be used to ask about the age of someone who is of the same generation as the speaker, or someone who is much younger. More polite forms are used to ask about the age of a senior person.

The verb 是 (be) is not needed before the age in the answer.

zhēn hěn

真 / 很 + adjective

真 and 很 are adverbs indicating a high degree. 真 means "really" and 很 means "very". An adjective is often used together with 真 or 很 as the predicate.

Subject	Predicate	
	Adverb	Adjective
Tā 他	zhēn 真	gāo 高。
He is really tall.		
Tā 他	hěn 很	gāo 高。
He is very tall.		

The Chinese structure "Subject + 真/很 + adjective" has the same meaning as the English structure "Subject + be + really/very + adjective", but the Chinese equivalent of "be" (是) is not needed in the Chinese sentences.

For example,

Correct	Wrong
Wǒ hěn gāoxìng 我很高兴。	Wǒ shì hěn gāoxìng 我是很高兴。 ×
I am very happy.	
Nǐ māma zhēn niánqīng 你妈妈真年轻!	Nǐ māma shì zhēn niánqīng 你妈妈是真年轻! ×
Your mum is really young!	

Unit 5

duōshao

Question word 多少

Although the question word 多少 is often translated as "how many" or "how much" in English, it can also be used to ask about telephone numbers and room numbers.

Subject	Verb	Question word
Nǐ de diànhuà hào	shì	duōshao
你的 电话 号码	是	多少?
What's your telephone number?		
Nǐ de fángjiān hào	shì	duōshao
你的 房间 号	是	多少?
What's your room number?		

Word order of Chinese addresses

An address in Chinese is written as follows. It starts with the biggest geographical component and ends with the smallest, followed by the name of the recipient.

Country	Province	City	Road	Number	Post code
Zhōngguó 中国	Guǎngdōng 广东省	Guǎngzhōu 广州市	Huānyuán 花园路	yībāilíngèr 102 号	510000

The word order of Chinese addresses is exactly the opposite of what is usually used in western countries, where the address starts with the name of the recipient and continues from the smallest geographical component to the biggest.

The pronunciation of the number "1"

"1" is often pronounced as "yāo" in telephone, room and bus numbers. If a number contains the same figure (including 0) two or more times in succession, each should be read separately. For example, 119 is read "yāo yāo jiǔ", 1200 is read "yāo èr líng líng".

Unit 6

Months and dates

⋮		1		1	
		2		2	
2008	nián 年	3	yuè 月	3	rì / hào 日 / 号
⋮		⋮		⋮	
		12		31	

In Chinese, a calendar year is expressed as four separate numbers followed by the word 年 (year), for example, 二〇一〇年, 一九五八年.

The names of the twelve months are expressed as cardinal numbers followed by the word 月 (month).

Yīyuè 一月	January	Qīyuè 七月	July
Èryuè 二月	February	Bāyuè 八月	August
Sānyuè 三月	March	Jiǔyuè 九月	September
Sìyuè 四月	April	Shíyuè 十月	October
Wǔyuè 五月	May	Shíyīyuè 十一月	November
Liùyuè 六月	June	Shí' èryuè 十二月	December

Dates are expressed as cardinal numbers from 1 to 31 followed by the word 日 (day, written form) or 号 (day, spoken form). For example,

qī rì (qī hào) èr shí yī rì (èr shí yī hào)
七日 (七号) 二十一日 (二十一号)

The word order for expressing dates in Chinese is year—month—day. For example,

Year	Month	Day
yī jiǔ qī bā nián 一九七八 年	Liùyuè 六月	jiǔ rì 九日
9 June 1978		
yī jiǔ sì wǔ nián 一九四五 年	Bāyuè 八月	èrshí' èr rì 二十二日
22 August 1945		

Xīngqī 星期						
yī	èr	sān	sì	wǔ	liù	rì tiān

The days of the week from Monday to Saturday are expressed as 星期 followed by the cardinal numbers from 1 to 6. Sunday is expressed as 星期日 (written form) or 星期天 (spoken form).

Xīngqīyī 星期一	Monday	Xīngqīwǔ 星期五	Friday
Xīngqī èr 星期二	Tuesday	Xīngqīliù 星期六	Saturday
Xīngqīsān 星期三	Wednesday	Xīngqīrì tiān 星期日/天	Sunday
Xīngqīsì 星期四	Thursday		

Sentences without verbs

In English, a sentence is incomplete without a verb, but Chinese sentences can sometimes go without a verb.

When expressing age, date, time and price, nouns (noun phrases) and numbers can function directly as nominal predicates after the subject without being preceded by the verb 是.

Subject	Predicate
Mǎkè 马克	shíjiǔ suì 十九岁。
Mark	is 19 years old.
Jīntiān 今天	Èryuè jiǔ hào 二月九号。
Today	is 9 February.
Xiànzài 现在	sān diǎn 三点。
	It is three o'clock now.
Yī gōngjīn mǐ 一公斤米	sān kuài sì 三块四。
	One kilogram of rice is three yuan and four jiao.

Note that in the English sentences the verb "be" is needed.

qǐng

Making invitations using 请

In Chinese, to invite or tell someone to do something the verbs 请 and 叫 are used. 请 means to invite someone to do something, usually in a polite manner, while 叫 means to tell or ask someone to do something.

Person making invitation	Verb	Person receiving invitation	Event/Activity
Wǒmen 我们	qǐng 请	tā 她	chī Zhōngcān 吃 中餐。
We invited her to have Chinese food.			
Wáng Yù 王玉	qǐng 请	Mǎkè 马克	qù tā jiā 去她家。
Wang Yu invited Mark to her home.			
Lǎoshī 老师	jiào 叫	xuéshēng 学生	shuō Zhōngwén 说 中文。
The teacher told the students to speak Chinese.			

Unit 7

Adverbial expressions of time

The adverbial expressions of time can be put either after or before the subject in a sentence.

For example, "I sleep at eleven." can be expressed as:

Subject	Adverbial of time	Predicate
wǒ 我	shíyī diǎn 十一点	shuìjiào 睡觉。

or

Adverbial of time	Subject	Predicate
Shíyī diǎn 十一点	wǒ 我	shuìjiào 睡觉。

If there is more than one adverbial expression of time in a sentence, the time word denoting the biggest time unit usually goes first.

Adverbial of time	Subject	Predicate
Míngtiān wǎnshàng qī diǎn 明天 晚上 七点	wǒmen 我们	zài diànyǐngyuàn ménkǒu jiàn 在 电影院 门口 见。

We meet at the entrance of the cinema at seven tomorrow evening.

Different ways of telling the time

The ways of telling the time in Chinese and English are very similar.

2:00	liǎng diǎn 两点
2:05	liǎng diǎn wǔ fēn 两点五分
2:25	liǎng diǎn èrshíwǔ fēn 两点二十五分
2:30	liǎng diǎn bàn 两点半

When the minute hand points to "6" on a clock, we can use 三十分 or 半 which means "half an hour".

2:45	liǎng diǎn sān kè chà yī kè sān diǎn 两点三刻 / 差一刻三点
------	---

刻 means "a quarter of an hour".

When the minute hand points to a number larger than six, we can use the expression "... minutes to ... (the next hour)". For example, 2:45 can be expressed in three ways in Chinese:

1	liǎng diǎn sìshíwǔ fēn 两点四十五分
---	-------------------------------

2	liǎng diǎn sān kè 两点三刻
---	------------------------

3	chà yī kè sān diǎn 差一刻三点 (a quarter to three)
---	---

yào

Expressing future tense with 要

In Chinese, verbs do not change form to express tenses. The future tense in Chinese can be expressed by putting the verb 要 before the main verb. When 要 is used in front of another verb, it functions as a modal verb indicating future tense or the desire to do something. It is often used to express future plans.

Subject	Modal verb	Predicate
wǒ 我	yào 要	qù yínháng 去 银行。
I am going to the bank.		
wǒ 我	yào 要	chī Zhōngcān 吃 中餐。
I want to eat Chinese food.		
tā 她	yào 要	qù Riběn 去 日本。
She is going to Japan.		

Unit 8

Measure words

The measure word 个 is used extensively for people or objects, both real and abstract.

People:	yī gè péngyou 一个朋友	a friend
Real objects:	yī gè píngguǒ 一个苹果	an apple
Abstract objects:	yī gè jiéguǒ 一个结果	a result

The measure word 件 is used for clothing, objects in general or abstract things.

Clothing:	yī jiàn máoyī 一件毛衣	a sweater
Objects in general:	yī jiàn lǐwù 一件礼物	a gift
Abstract things:	yī jiàn gōngzuò 一件工作	a piece of work

The measure word 条 is used for long and narrow objects, including animals or body parts.

Long and narrow objects:	yī tiáo kùzi 一条裤子	a pair of trousers
Animals:	yī tiáo yú 一条鱼	a fish
Body parts:	yī tiáo tuǐ 一条腿	a leg

The measure word 双 is used for things that come in pairs, including body parts.

Body parts:	yī shuāng shǒu 一双手	a pair of hands
Objects:	yī shuāng wàzi 一双袜子	a pair of socks

èr liǎng Numerals 二 / 两

二 is used:

- when counting, e.g. 一、二、三、.....
- for expressing ordinal arrangement, e.g. 第二个人
- as the last digit of a numerical expression, e.g. 九十二

两 is used for expressing quantity, e.g. 两本书

Expressing past tense using 了

The past tense in Chinese can be expressed by putting the particle 了 after the main verb. Note that this structure is not the exact equivalent of past tense in English because it only indicates the completion of an action, and does not point out specifically that the action happened in the past.

Subject	Verb	Particle	Object
Wǒ 我	mǎi 买	le 了	yī běn shū 一本书。 I bought a book.
Wǒ 我	chī 吃	le 了	Zhōngcān 中餐。 I ate Chinese food.

Unit 9

Expressing existence using 有

The verb 有 has several meanings. The primary one means "have". For example,

Subject	Verb	Object / Noun phrase
Tā 她	yǒu 有	yī gè gēge 一个哥哥。 She has an elder brother.
Wǒ 我	yǒu 有	hěn duō shū 很多书。 I have many books.

The subject of 有, the possessor, is usually a living creature, but it can also be an inanimate object. For example,

Shuǐ li yǒu hěn duō yú
水里有很多鱼。There are many fish in the water.

有 indicates existence if the subject is a nominal expression denoting location or time. The object of 有 is the person or thing concerned.

Subject	Verb	Object / Noun phrase
Fùjìn 附近	yǒu 有	chāoshì 超市。 There is a supermarket nearby.
Fángzi li 房子里	yǒu 有	rénn 人。 There is someone in the house.
Míngtiān 明天	yǒu 有	zúqiú bǐsài 足球比赛。 There is a football match tomorrow.

The negative form of 有 is 没有. For example,
 Fùjìn méiyǒu chāoshì
 附近 没有 超市。 There is no supermarket nearby.

yǒu méiyǒu Asking questions using 有 没有

没有 is the negative form of the verb 有, and we can use the phrase 有没有 in affirmative-negative questions. For example,

Subject	Verb	Object / Noun
Nǐ 你	yǒu méiyǒu 有没有	qián 钱?
Do you have any money?		
Fángzǐ li 房子里	yǒu méiyǒu 有没有	rén 人?
Is there anybody in the house?		

zài Expressing locations with the verb 在

The word 在 has many different uses. It can be used as a verb to indicate the location of an object or a person, meaning "at/in". To negate, just put the negation word 不 before the verb 在.

Subject	Predicate		
	Adverb	Verb	Noun phrase
Xǐshǒujīān 洗手间		zài 在	shūdiàn qiánbian 书店 前边。
The toilet is in front of the bookshop.			
Dìtiězhàn 地铁站	bù 不	zài 在	gōngyuán de nánbian 公园 的 南边。
The subway station is not to the south of the park.			

Unit 10

háishi Alternative questions with 还是

An alternative question is formed by linking two alternative options with the conjunction 还是. The respondent is expected to choose one or the other option. For example,

Nǐ xǐhuān Zhōngguó háishi xǐhuān Měiguó
 你喜欢 中国 还是 喜欢 美国?

Do you like China or the US?

Wǒ xǐhuān Zhōngguó
 我喜欢 中国。

I like China.

Wǒmen zuò dìtiě qù háishi zuò chūzūchē qù
 我们坐 地铁去 还是 坐 出租车去?

Shall we go by subway or by taxi?

Wǒmen zuò dìtiě qù
 我们 坐 地铁 去。
 We'll go by subway.

The verb in the second option may be omitted if the same verb is used in both options.

Wǒmen chī Zhōngcān háishì chī Hángróngcài
 我们 吃 中餐 还是 (吃) 韩国菜?
 Shall we eat Chinese food or Korean food?

hǎoma Questions ending with 好吗

好吗 is used after stating an idea or suggestion. Questions ending with 好吗 are used to ask for someone's opinion.

Wǒmen qù chī Zhōngcān 我们 去 吃 中餐 ,	hǎoma 好吗?
We will go and have Chinese food, OK?	
Wǒmen zuò dìtiě qù 我们 坐 地铁 去 ,	hǎoma 好吗?
We go there by subway, OK?	

If the respondent agrees to the suggestion, he may say 好 or 好吧. But he can also use “……吧” to indicate an alternative suggestion, which is used here to soften the tone of the answer. For example,

Wǒmen qù chī Zhōngcān hǎo ma
 我们 去 吃 中餐, 好吗?
 We go to have Chinese food, OK?

Hǎo Hǎo ba
 好。/ 好吧。 (showing agreement)
 All right.

Wǒmen qù chī Hángróngcài ba
 我们 去 吃 韩国菜 吧。 (giving an alternative suggestion)
 Let's go and have Korean food.

zuì Expressing superlatives with 最

最 is an adverb that can be used before an adjective, a verb or a location word to indicate the superlative degree. For example,

zuì hǎo 最好	the best
zuì xǐhuān 最喜欢	like the best
zuì nánbian 最 南边	the very south

Using the particle 吧 ba

吧 can be used at the end of a sentence to express different moods, including command, approval, request and suggestion.

Command	Mǎshàng qù shàngxué ba 马上去上学吧! Go to school immediately!
Approval	Wǒmen jiù zhèyàng zuò ba 我们就这样做吧。 Let's do it this way.
Request	Qǐng nǐ zǒu ba 请你走吧。 Please go away.
Suggestion	Xiànzài bù zǎo le wǒmen zǒu ba 现在不早了，我们走吧。 It's getting late now, let's go.

Pivotal sentences

A pivotal sentence has two verbs, the object of the first verb functioning at the same time as the subject of the second verb. For example,

Lǎoshī xǐhuāng wǒmen xué Zhōngwén 老师希望我们学中文。
Wǒ qǐng nǐ chī fàn 我请你就饭。

The first objects 我们 and 你 function as pivots of the above sentences because each of them connects the first half of the sentence with the second.

Talking about past actions with 过 guo

过 is used after verbs to indicate that something happened in the past.

Mǎkè qùguo Zhōngguó
马克去过中国。 Mark has been to China.

Ānnà chīguo Rìběncài
安娜吃过日本菜。 Anna has eaten Japanese food.

In a negative sentence, 没 (有) is used before the main verb to indicate that something has not happened.

Wǒ méi yǒu kànqù zhè běn shū
我没(有)看过这本书。 I have not read this book.

Unit 11

Using modal verbs 可以 / 会

The modal verb 可以 is used before another verb to express ability or permission.

When 可以 indicates the ability to do something, it can be translated into English as "can" or "be able to".

Wǒ kěyǐ shuō Yīngyǔ
我可以 说 英语。 I can speak English.

Tā kěyǐ chī wǔ wǎn fàn
他可以 吃 五 碗 饭。 He can eat five bowls of rice.

When 可以 indicates permission, it can be translated into English as "may" or "be allowed to".

Nǐ kěyǐ jinlái
你可以 进来。 You may come in.

Nǐ kěyǐ zǒu le
你可以 走了。 You may leave now.

The modal verb 会 precedes another verb to indicate the ability to do something.

Tā huì shuō Hánnyǔ
她会 说 汉语。 She can speak Chinese.

Tā huì yóuyǒng
他会 游泳。 He can swim.

While both 可以 and 会 can be used to mean the ability to do something, 可以 usually expresses general and physical capability, and 会 emphasizes skills acquired through learning and practice.

Unit 12

Expressing alternatives using 或者 / 还是

The conjunctions 或者 and 还是 mean "or". They are used to connect clauses suggesting two alternatives or possibilities.

或者 can only be used in declarative sentences, whereas 还是 is mainly used in questions.

Wǒ	xiǎng qù Běijīng	huòzhě	Shànghǎi
I want to go to Beijing or Shanghai.			

Wǒmen	dǎsuān sān diǎn	huòzhě	sān diǎn bàn qu
We plan to go at three or half past three.			

Nǐ	xiǎng xué jīngjù	háishì	Zhōngguó gōngfu
Do you want to learn Beijing opera or Chinese kung fu?			

Nǐ	dǎsuān mǎi dàiyī	háishì	qúnzi
Do you plan to buy a coat or a skirt?			

měi dōu

Expressing regular events with 每 都.....

The word 每 means "every". It is usually used before numerals and measure words to form phrases like 每个....., 每件..... If the numeral is 一 (one), it is often dropped, for example, 每(一)个....., 每(一)件..... (every ...).

每 can be used to express specific time reference if it is followed by nouns denoting time, like 年 (year), 月 (month), 天 (day). In this case, the measure word can be omitted.

měi 每	Numeral	Measure word	Nouns denoting time	
měi 每	yī (一)		nián 年	every year
měi 每	liǎng 两		nián 年	every other year
měi 每	yī (一)	gè (个)	yuè 月	every month
měi 每	liǎng 两	gè 个	yuè 月	every other month
měi 每	yī (一)		every day	
měi 每	liǎng 两		tiān 天	every other day

A sentence containing 每 usually requires the adverb 都, which comes immediately before the verb, to fully express the sense of "wholeness". Sentences containing this "每.....都....." structure have two kinds of word order. The time phrase "每....." can be put either before or after the subject.

Tā 他	měi gè jiàqī 每个假期	dōu huí jiā 都回家。
Měi gè jiàqī 每个假期	tā 他	dōu huí jiā 都回家。
He goes home every holiday.		
Mǎkè 马克	měi gè zhōumò 每个周末	dōu qù páshān 都去爬山。
Měi gè zhōumò 每个周末	Mǎkè 马克	dōu qù páshān 都去爬山。
Mark goes climbing every weekend.		

Picture captions

Unit 1 p17 The Great Wall at Badaling, near Beijing / p20 Martial artists practise kung fu / p23 Cyclists in Beijing / pp24–25 (background) Li River valley, Yangshuo, Guangxi Zhuang Autonomous Region

Unit 2 p27 A traditional tea ceremony at a resort near Kunming, Yunnan / p30 Traditional clothes on display in Longji, Guangxi / p33 Folk dance on Tian'anmen Square, Beijing / pp34–35 (background) Sunrise on Huangshan (Yellow Mountain), Anhui

Unit 3 p37 Cormorant fisherman on the Li river, Guilin / p40 Policewomen in uniform / p42 Ploughing a terraced rice paddy, Qingkou, Yuanyang, Yunnan / pp44–45 (background) Fields around Jinjiling (Golden Rooster Hill), Luoping County, Yunnan

Unit 4 p47 Rollerskater on the Bund, Shanghai / p50 Bruce Lee statue, Avenue of Stars, Tsim Sha Tsui, Hong Kong / p52 Farmhouse near Guilin / pp54–55 (background) The karst landscape around Guilin

Review 1 p60 The Forbidden City, Beijing

Unit 5 p61 Girl talking on public telephone, Beijing / pp62–63 Doorway of traditional Chinese architecture Style, Beijing / p66 A traditional Chinese courtyard / pp68–69 (background) Sunset by Leifeng Hill, Xihu (West Lake), Hangzhou, Zhejiang

Unit 6 p71 Children play with firecrackers on Lunar New Year / p76 Traditional decorative knotwork / p77 Decorative characters for Spring Festival / pp78–79 (background) The yellow earth landscape of northwest China

Unit 7 p81 Commuters travel by bicycle in Kunming, Yunnan / p86 Zhuang minority woman in Longji, Guilin, Guangxi / p88–89 (background) Musical fountain at Big Wild Goose Pagoda, Xi'an

Unit 8 p91 Ceramics, chopsticks and other decorative wares at a Beijing market / p96 Calligraphy supplies and artwork, Beijing / pp98–99 (background) Yalong Bay, Hainan

Review 2 p104 Tangyue memorial archway, Anhui

Unit 9 p105 Pudong district, Shanghai, with the Oriental Pearl Tower / pp110–111 Busy commute of cars at night / pp112–113 (background) Hukou Waterfall, the Yellow River, Ji County, Shaanxi

Unit 10 p115 Shanghai Maglev Train, the world's fastest passenger train / pp122–123 (background) Sanya Bay, Hainan

Unit 11 p125 Woman dancing in a Shanghai linong alleyway neighbourhood / p130 Decorated dragon boat for Qingming festival / pp132–133 (background) Sky lantern festival, Pingxi, Taiwan

Unit 12 p135 Traditional Chinese theatre cast member, Singapore / p141 Rickshaw drivers wait for customers / pp142–143 (background) Cattle ranching in Habahe (Qaba) County, Xinjiang

Review 3 p148 Ta'er Temple, Xining, Qinghai

Pair work activities pp152–153 Hong Kong harbour tourist cruise boat / p154 Night market in Snake Alley, Wanhua district, Taipei / p155 Bamboo forest / 158–159 Shaolin monk show, Shanghai / p160 Vegetable sellers at market / p161 Beijing opera performer in traditional make-up

Pinyin pronunciation guide

Sound	Words	Example 1	Example 2
Initials			
b	bed	bō 玻	bēi 杯
p	pin	pō 坡	pāi 拍
m	moon	mō 摸	mái 埋
f	fun	fó 佛	fā 发
d	day	dé 得	dā 搭
t	tin	tè 特	tā 他
n	nose	ne 呢	nà 纳
l	long	lè 勒	lā 拉
g	good	gē 哥	gāi 该
k	kind	kē 科	kāi 开
h	hat	hē 喝	hā 哈
j	jug	jī 基	jīāo 交
q		qī 欺	qià 恰
x		xī 希	xīāo 消
zh	bridge	zhī 知	zhā 渣
ch	chin	chī 吃	chá 茶
sh	shirt	shī 诗	shā 沙
r	reduce	rì 日	rén 人
z	"ds" in reads	zī 资	zá 杂
c	"ts" in hats	cí 雌	cā 擦
s	say	sī 思	sè 色
Finals			
a	far	ā 啊	bā 八
o	saw	wō 喔	mò 墨
e	her	é 鹅	ché 车
i	bee	yī 衣	bǐ 比
u	rude	wū 乌	wū 屋
ü	German Fühlen	yū 迂	nǚ 女
ai	eye	āi 哀	bái 白
ei	eight	ēi 欸	féi 肥
ao	cow	áo熬	bāo 包
ou	oh	ōu 欧	pōu 剖
an	enhance	ān 安	bān 班
en	taken	ēn 恩	bēn 本

ang	gang	áng 昂	bāng 邦
eng	sung	ēng 亨	bēng 崩
ong	German Lunge	ōng 轰	dōng 东
ia	yard	yá 呀	xià 夏
ie	yes	yē 耶	bié 别
iao	meow	yāo 腰	jiāo 交
iu	yoga	yōu 优	diū 丢
ian	yen	yān 烟	piān 偏
in	in	yīn 因	bīn 宾
iang	e + yang	yāng 央	niáng 娘
ing	sing	yīng 英	bīng 丙
iong	German Jünger	yōng 雍	qíóng 穷
ua	guano	wā 蛙	guā 瓜
uo	wall	wō 窝	duō 多
uai	why	wāi 歪	guài 怪
uei		wéi 威	wéi 围
uan	wan	wān 弯	duǎn 短
un	won	wēn 温	kūn 昆
uang	u + ongoing	wāng 汪	guāng 光
ueng		wēng 翁	wēng 瓮
üe	ü + eh	yuē 约	quē 缺
üan	ü + an	yuān 冤	xuān 宣
ün	German grün	yūn 晕	qún 群

Combinations of pinyin initials and simple finals

simple finals ↓	a	o	e	i	u	ü
Initials	ba	bo		bi	bu	
b	ba	bo		bi	bu	
p	pa	po		pi	pu	
m	ma	mo	me	mi	mu	
f	fa	fo			fu	
d	da		de	di	du	
t	ta		te	ti	tu	
n	na		ne	ni	nu	nü
l	la		le	li	lu	lü
g	ga		ge		gu	
k	ka		ke		ku	
h	ha		he		hu	
j				ji		jü (ju)
q				qi		quü (qu)
x				xi		xü (xu)

English translations

Unit 1

Vocabulary and listening

Mark: Hello!

Wang Yu: Hello!

Mark: May I ask what your name is?

Wang Yu: I'm Wang Yu. How about you?

Mark: I'm Mark, Mark Johnson. Nice to meet you, Miss Yu.

Wang Yu: Sorry, my family name is Wang.

Mark: Yes, she is my younger sister. This is my younger brother.

Yeong-min: Are your younger sister and younger brother students too?

Mark: My younger brother is a student, but my younger sister is a journalist.

Anna: What does your father do?

Mark: He is a doctor.

Anna: Where does your mother work?

Mark: She works at a hospital. My father and mother are both doctors.

Reading and writing

I'm Mark Johnson. My Chinese name is Mǎkè. Pleased to meet you all.

Hi, everybody! I'm Anna Pollard. My Chinese name is Ānnà. Very happy to meet you all.

Hello! I am Steve Brown. My Chinese name is Shǐdīfū.

Reading and writing

Steve:

Hello!

This is a photo of my family. He is my father. She is my mother. They both work at a hospital. They're both doctors. This is my elder brother, he works at a school. He is a teacher. This is my elder sister. She is a journalist. This is me. I'm a student.

Unit 2

Vocabulary and listening

Steve: Good morning!

Wang Yu: Good morning!

Steve: Are you Japanese?

Wang Yu: No, I am not Japanese.

Steve: Where are you from?

Wang Yu: I'm Chinese. Which country are you from?

Steve: I'm British.

Wang Yu: Do you live in London?

Steve: No, I live in Beijing.

Unit 4

Vocabulary and listening

Anna: Who is he? He's Yao Ming, isn't he?

Wang Yu: Yes.

Anna: Where is he from?

Wang Yu: Shanghai, but now he lives in the US.

Anna: How old is he? Thirty-five years old?

Wang Yu: I don't know.

Anna: He's so tall!

Wang Yu: And also very handsome, and very cool!
He is my favourite basketball player!

Reading and writing

Do you know them?

They are Hollywood stars, but they are not Americans. Hayden Christensen is Canadian. Charlize Theron is South African. Russell Crowe is from New Zealand. Nicole Kidman is from Sydney, Australia. Cate Blanchett is from Melbourne, Australia.

Reading and writing

Name: Wang Yu Age: 20 years old

Place of birth: Beijing Nationality: Chinese

Email: wangyu0521@DC.com

Favourite animal: panda—cute!

Favourite athlete: Yao Ming—very handsome!

Favourite actor: Bruce Lee—really cool!

Unit 3

Vocabulary and listening

Yeong-min: Is she your younger sister?

Unit 5

Vocabulary and listening

Yeong-min: Steve, is your phone number 55546998?

Steve: Yes, this is my home phone number.

Yeong-min: What's your mobile phone number?

Steve: My mobile phone number is 12081345761.

Yeong-min: Where do you live?

Steve: I live at 19 Park Road.

Yeong-min: What's your email address?

Steve: steve@DC.com.

Reading and writing

Inbox

This is my new address and phone number: Room 506, Student Dormitory, 23 University Road. You can call me on the phone.

Sender: Mark 16628958763

Inbox

Received. Thanks! Does Anna also live on University Road?

Sender: Wang Yu 11872356725

Inbox

No, she lives on Park Road.

Sender: Mark 16628958763

Unit 6

Vocabulary and listening

Mark: Yeong-min, 9 February is Wang Yu's birthday.

Yeong-min: Really? What date is it today?

Mark: Today is 5 February.

Yeong-min: What day of the week is the ninth?

Mark: Sunday. We'll invite her to have a meal. How about that?

Yeong-min: OK. Where shall we go?

Mark: How about "Mama's Kitchen"? The Chinese food there is very tasty.

Yeong-min: OK, no problem.

Reading and writing

3-9 June

Sunday

9:00~12:00 a.m. play basketball

6:00~9:00 p.m. meet Wang Yu's elder brother

Monday

9:00~12:00 a.m. read books

3:00~6:00 p.m. go to work

Tuesday

12:00~3:00 p.m. study Chinese

6:00~9:00 p.m. eat Chinese food with Mark

Wednesday

9:00~12:00 a.m. go to hospital

3:00~6:00 p.m. read books

Thursday

9:00~12:00 a.m. meet my teacher

3:00~6:00 p.m. go to work

Friday

12:00~3:00 p.m. study Chinese

6:00~9:00 p.m. go to Steve's birthday party

Saturday

9:00~12:00 a.m. meet Mark

3:00~6:00 p.m. go to Wang Yu's new home

Unit 7

Vocabulary and listening

Steve: Wang Yu, do you have some free time this weekend?

Wang Yu: I'm going to see my grandpa on Sunday.

Steve: What are your plans for Saturday?

Wang Yu: I don't have any.

Steve: Let's go and see a movie together, OK?

Wang Yu: What movie?

Steve: A Chinese film. The film's title is "Family".

Wang Yu: OK. What time?

Steve: The movie starts at eight thirty. How about we meet at the entrance of the cinema at eight?

Wang Yu: Great. I want to invite my friend, too, is that OK?

Steve: No problem. See you at eight tomorrow evening!

Reading and writing

Weekend planner

Saturday		Things to do
Morning	8: 45	study English
Noon	12: 30	eat Japanese food with friends
Afternoon	3: 15	go jogging with brother
Evening	8: 00	see a movie with Steve, meet at the entrance of the cinema
Reminder	write Mark an email	
Sunday		Things to do
Morning	10: 15	learn singing
Noon	12: 00	see grandpa and grandma
Afternoon	4: 45	go to university to exercise
Evening	6: 00	eat dinner at home
	8: 00	study English
Reminder	invite music teacher to a concert; write a birthday card for Mark; write a blog entry	

Anna: Wang Yu, is this expensive?

Wang Yu: It's not expensive. Buy this one then.

Anna: OK. Here is the money.

Shop assistant: Thank you.

Reading and writing

Beijing Life

Thursday 2 July

This is my favourite bookshop in Beijing. I like reading!

This clothing market is far away, but the prices are low. On Sunday I bought a pair of trousers for twenty *yuan*, very cheap. I bought my elder brother a T-shirt. He likes both black and white T-shirts.

This is a famous shopping centre called the Village. Last month I bought a pair of shoes and a coat here. Every weekend, there are a lot of people here.

This is me and Xiaoxiao. Xiaoxiao is a shop assistant at the supermarket. I come here to buy things every Sunday morning.

Unit 8

Vocabulary and listening

Shop assistant: May I ask, what kind of clothes do you want to buy?

Anna: I want to buy a skirt.

Shop assistant: Please come this way ... How about this one?

Anna: It's too red!

Shop assistant: Is this one all right?

Anna: I don't like blue. Is there a black one?

Shop assistant: How about this black one?

Anna: It doesn't look too good.

Shop assistant: Try this one.

Anna: This one is not bad. How much is it?

Shop assistant: Two hundred and seventy-nine *yuan*.

Anna: Can you make it cheaper?

Shop assistant: Sorry, this price is the lowest.

Unit 9

Vocabulary and listening

Steve: Where does Anna live?

Yeong-min: Number 34, Park Road.

Steve: How do we get there?

Yeong-min: Let's ask a passerby.

Yeong-min: Excuse me, is this Park Road?

Passerby: No. Park Road is behind the post office.

Yeong-min: How do we get there?

Passerby: Head south.

Yeong-min: Is it far from here?

Passerby: Not far.

Steve: Excuse me, is this Park Road?

Passerby: That's right.

Yeong-min: Is there a building number 34 here?

Passerby: Yes, it's near the bank, in front of a bookshop. Go straight ahead for about five minutes.

Reading and writing

1 Flat for rent

18 University Road, second floor. There are three rooms. The flat is very near the university. There is a student dorm to the east, a subway station to the west and a supermarket to the north. There is a cinema nearby. Transport and shopping are both very convenient.

¥4200/month Telephone: 25489076

Contact Miss Zhao

2 Flat for rent

Very cheap!

98 Nanjing Road, eighth floor, 120 square metres. There are a lot of bookshops and cheap restaurants nearby. There is a park to the east and a shopping centre to the west.

¥3500/month Telephone: 69812047

Contact Mr. Ma

Unit 10

Vocabulary and listening

Yeong-min: Steve, where did you buy that T-shirt? It doesn't look too nice!

Steve: Really? This is my favourite T-shirt. I like its colour.

Yeong-min: You need some new clothes. Let's go to the shopping centre together and buy some.

Steve: Is it in Sanlitun?

Yeong-min: Yes.

Steve: How do we go there? By bus or by taxi?

Yeong-min: Let's take the subway. The subway is more convenient.

Steve: OK.

Yeong-min: Shall we go on Saturday or Sunday?

Steve: Saturday.

Yeong-min: OK. And then we'll go for dinner, OK?

Steve: Of course! What restaurants are there? **Yeong-min:** There are Italian restaurants and also Japanese restaurants.

Steve: Let's eat Italian food.

Yeong-min: Great. Italian food is my favourite!

Reading and writing

Travel plans

Time of travel Summer holiday

(the first week of the holiday)

Where to go Guilin

by train (convenient, cheap)

People to invite Steve and Mark

What to do river cruise, shopping, climbing, photography, visiting famous scenic sites

Unit 11

Vocabulary and listening

Steve: Wang Yu, what kind of sports do you like?

Wang Yu: I like basketball, and football too.

Steve: Do you want to watch a football match next month?

Wang Yu: Of course! What teams are playing?

Steve: China and England, at the stadium near our university.

Wang Yu: OK, I'll go with you. I hope China win!

Steve: I hope England win!

Wang Yu: Do you want to do some exercise this weekend?

Steve: What kind of exercise?

Wang Yu: Let's play tennis, shall we?

Steve: Sorry, I don't know how to play tennis, but I can dance. Let's go dancing together.

Wang Yu: I don't like dancing, and I haven't learnt how.

Steve: How about we go swimming?

Wang Yu: OK! Swimming is my favourite.

Steve: Let's go tomorrow morning, is that OK?

- Wang Yu:** I jog in the morning. Let's go in the afternoon.
- Steve:** OK. See you tomorrow.

- Yeong-min:** After we come back to Beijing, we can go to see some Beijing opera.
- Steve:** Great, I really like watching Beijing opera.

Reading and writing

Students' sport and recreation questionnaire

Name: Mark Age: 19
 Gender: male Nationality: Australian

What sports can you do?

- | | |
|---|---|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> play football | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> surfing |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> swim | <input type="checkbox"/> skiing |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> play basketball | <input type="checkbox"/> diving |
| <input type="checkbox"/> play table tennis | <input type="checkbox"/> bungee jump |
| <input type="checkbox"/> others | |

How many hours' exercise do you do every week?

- 0 1-2 3-4 5-10

When do you exercise? Five o'clock every afternoon.

Who do you exercise with? Together with friends.

Where do you exercise?

- home school sports ground

Reading and writing

Bob

I plan to travel to China for this year's holiday. There are many fun places in China. But I can only go to one place. My friends said that both Shanghai and Beijing are good. What do you think?

Wang Yu

Go to Beijing. There are two flights from Britain to Beijing every day, which is very convenient.

Peter

Xi'an is my favourite place. I think you should go to Xi'an. You can visit the Terracotta Warriors. Wang Yu, do you think Bob should go to Xi'an?

Wang Yu

Xi'an is a very pretty city that has thousands of years of history.

Bob

Good idea. I like history. Xi'an is not bad. How do I get to Xi'an?

Wang Yu

You can take a plane.

Unit 12

Vocabulary and listening

Anna: Yeong-min, Steve, what are you planning to do for the holidays?

Yeong-min: Every holiday I go travelling.

Steve: I want to travel, too, or maybe go home.

Anna: Don't go home. It's too far away. Let's travel together, OK?

Steve: Where should we go? Singapore or Hong Kong?

Yeong-min: Hong Kong, of course. I like Hong Kong.

Anna: Singapore is too far away. Let's go to Hong Kong. There we can go shopping, and we can go to a concert.

Steve: Let's go to Hong Kong, then.

Yeong-min: How do we get there? By air or by train?

Anna: Of course by air. The plane is very convenient.

Vocabulary list

WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT	WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT
A 埃及	Āijí	n.	Egypt	2	吃饭	chīfàn	v.	have a meal	6
矮	ǎi	adj.	short (height)	4	冲浪	chōnglàng	v.	surf	11
澳大利亚	Àodàiliyà	n.	Australia	2	出生地	chūshēngdì	n.	place of birth	4
B 爸爸	bàba	n.	father	3	出租	chūzū	v.	rent out, lease	9
吧	ba	particle	(for making suggestions)	8	出租车	chūzūchē	n.	taxi	10
百	bǎi	num.	hundred	8	厨房	chúfáng	n.	kitchen	6
白色	báisè	n.	white	8	厨师	chúshī	n.	chef	3
班	bān	measure word		12	船	chuán	n.	boat	10
半	bàn	num.	half (an hour)	7	从	cóng	prep.	from	12
棒球	bàngqiú	n.	baseball	11	D 打	dǎ	v.	play (ball game with hands)	6
北边	běibian	n.	north	9	打电话	dǎ diànhuà		make a phone call	5
北京	Běijīng	n.	Beijing	2	打工	dǎgōng	v.	do part-time work	12
蹦极	bèngjí	v.	bungee jump	11	打算	dǎsuan	v.	plan	12
比赛	bǐsài	n.	match, competition	11	大家	dàjiā	pron.	everybody	1
别	bié	adv.	do not	12	大学	dàxué	n.	university	5
兵马俑	Bīngmǎiyōng	n.	Terracotta Warriors	12	大衣	dàyī	n.	coat	8
博客	bókè	n.	blog	7	但是	dànshì	conj.	but	3
不	bù	adv.	not, no	2	当然	dāngrán	adv.	of course	10
不错	bùcuò	adj.	not bad	8	导游	dǎoyóu	n.	tour guide	3
C 菜	cài	n.	food, dish	7	到	dào	v.	get to (a place), arrive	7
餐	cān	n.	cuisine, meal	6	德国	Déguó	n.	Germany	2
参观	cānguān	v.	visit (a place)	10	的	de	structural particle		3
餐厅	cāntīng	n.	restaurant	10	弟弟	dìdì	n.	younger brother	3
长	cháng	adj.	long	4	地方	dìfang	n.	place	12
唱歌	chànggē	v.	sing a song	7	地铁站	dìtiězhàn	n.	subway station	9
超市	chāoshì	n.	supermarket	8	地址	dìzhǐ	n.	address	5
衬衫	chènshān	n.	shirt	8	第一个	dì-yī gè		the first	10
城市	chéngshì	n.	city	12					
吃	chī	v.	eat	6	* The words in colour are not target words for the units.				

WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT	WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT
点	diǎn	n.	o'clock	7	分	fēn	n.	minute	7
电话	diànhuà	n.	telephone	5	分钟	fēnzhōng	n.	minute	9
电视	diànsī	n.	television	7	服务员	fúwùyuán	n.	waiter, waitress	3
电影	diànyǐng	n.	movie, film	7	服装市场	fúzhuāng shìchǎng	n.	clothes market	8
电影院	diànyǐngyuàn	n.	cinema	7	附近	fùjìn	n./adj.	vicinity, nearby	9
电子邮件	diànzǐ yóujíàn	n.	email	7	G 橄榄球	gǎnlǎnqiú	n.	rugby	11
电子邮箱	diànzǐ yóuxiāng	n.	email box/address	4	高	gāo	adj.	tall	4
东边	dōngbian	n.	east	9	高兴	gāoxìng	adj.	glad, happy	1
东西	dōngxi	n.	thing	8	哥哥	gēge	n.	elder brother	3
动物	dòngwù	n.	animal	4	个子	gèzi	n.	(person) height	4
都	dōu	adv.	both, all	3	给	gěi	v./prep.	give, to	5
短	duǎn	adj.	short (length)	4	跟	gēn	prep.	with	6
短裤	duǎnkù	n.	shorts	8	工程师	gōngchéngshī	n.	engineer	3
短信	duǎnxìn	n.	message	5	工作	gōngzuò	n./v.	work, job	3
队	duì	n.	team	11	公交车	gōngqìchē	n.	bus	10
对	duì	adj.	right, correct	9	公寓	gōngyù	n.	block of flats, apartment building	5
对不起	duìbuqǐ		sorry	1	公园	gōngyuán	n.	park	5
多大	duō dà		how old	5	购物中心	gòuwù zhōngxīn	n.	shopping centre	8
多少	duōshao	pron.	what, how many/much	5	E 二月	Èryuè	n.	Guangzhou	12
F 发件人	fājiànrén	n.	sender	5	贵	guì	adj.	expensive	8
发送	fāsòng	v.	send	5	桂林	Guìlín	n.	Guilin	10
法国	Fǎguó	n.	France	2	国	guó	n.	country	2
饭馆	fàngguǎn	n.	restaurant	9	国籍	guójí	n.	nationality	4
方便	fāngbiàn	adj.	convenient	9	过	guo		indicator of past actions	11
房间	fángjiān	n.	room	5	H 还是	háishi	conj.	or (in a question)	10
房子	fángzi	n.	flat, house	9	韩国	Háuguó	n.	Korea	2
飞机	fēijī	n.	aeroplane	12	好	hǎo	adj.	good, OK	1
飞机场	fēijīchǎng	n.	airport	10	好吃	hǎochī	adj.	tasty	6

WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT	WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT
好看	hǎokàn	adj.	good-looking	8	件	jiàn	measure word	item, piece	8
好莱坞	Hǎoláiwū	n.	Hollywood	2	见面	jiànmiàn	v.	meet up	6
好玩	hǎowán	adj.	fun	12	健身房	jiànshēnfáng	n.	gymnasium	9
号	hào	n.	number, date (spoken)	5	交通	jiāotōng	n.	transportation	9
号码	hàomǎ	n.	number, code	5	叫	jiào	v.	be called	1
和	hé	conj.	and	3	街	jiē	n.	street	5
黑色	hēisè	n.	black	8	姐姐	jiějie	n.	elder sister	3
很	hěn	adv.	very	1	今年	jīnnián	n.	this year	12
很多	hěnduō	adj.	a lot of	8	今天	jīntiān	n.	today	6
红	hóng	adj.	red	8	近	jìn	adj.	near	9
后边	hòubian	n.	back	9	京剧	jīngjù	n.	Beijing opera	12
护士	hùshi	n.	nurse	3	警察局	jǐngchájú	n.	police station	9
滑雪	huáxuě	v.	ski	11	景点	jǐngdiǎn	n.	scenic site	10
黄色	huángsè	n.	yellow	8	九月	Jiǔyuè	n.	September	6
回	huí	v.	go back	12	觉得	juéde	v.	think, feel	12
会	huì	v.	can, be able to	11	K 咖啡店	kāfēidiàn	n.	café	9
火车	huǒchē	n.	train	10	开始	kāishǐ	v.	start	7
火车站	huǒchēzhàn	n.	railway station	10	看	kàn	v.	read, see	6
或者	huòzhě	conj.	or (in a statement)	12	刻	kè	n.	quarter (of an hour)	7
J 几	jǐ	pron.	how many	6	可爱	kě' ài	adj.	cute	4
几点	jǐdiǎn		what time	7	可以	kěyǐ	v.	may, can	5
计划	jìhuà	n.	plan	7	肯尼亚	Kěnníyà	n.	Kenya	2
记者	jìzhě	n.	journalist	3	酷	kù	adj.	cool	4
家	jiā	n.	family, home	3	裤子	kùzi	n.	trousers	8
加拿大	Jiānádà	n.	Canada	2	块	kuài	measure word	currency unit of China (yuan)	8
加油站	jiāyóuzhàn	n.	petrol station	10	L 来	lái	v.	come	8
假期	jiàqī	n.	holiday	10	篮球	lánqiú	n.	basketball	4
价钱	jiàqian	n.	price	8	蓝色	lánse	n.	blue	8
见	jiàn	v.	see, meet	7	老	lǎo	adj.	old	4

WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT	WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT
老师	lǎoshī	n.	teacher	3	明天	míngtiān	n.	tomorrow	7
离	lí	v.	away from	9	明星	míngxīng	n.	celebrity	2
理发师	lǐfàshī	n.	barber, hairdresser	3	名字	míngzì	n.	name	1
历史	lìshǐ	n.	history	12	墨尔本	Mò'ěrběn	n.	Melbourne	2
联系	liánxì	v./n.	contact	9	墨西哥	Mòxīgē	n.	Mexico	2
连衣裙	liányīqún	n.	one-piece dress	8	N 哪	nǎ	pron.	which	2
了	le	particle		7	哪里	nǎlǐ	pron.	where	2
六月	Liǔyuè	n.	June	6	哪儿	nǎr	pron.	where	9
楼	lóu	n.	building, storey	9	那里	nàlǐ	pron.	there	6
路	lù	n.	road	5	那么	nàme	conj.	then, so	12
路人	lùrén	n.	passerby	9	奶奶	nǎinai	n.	grandmother	7
旅馆	lǚguǎn	n.	hotel	9	男	nán	n.	male	11
旅行	lǚxíng	v./n.	travel	10	南边	nánbian	n.	south	9
绿色	lǜsè	n.	green	8	南非	Nánfēi	n.	South Africa	2
律师	lǜshī	n.	lawyer	3	呢	ne	particle	(used to ask questions)	1
伦敦	Lúndūn	n.	London	2	你	nǐ	pron.	you	1
M 妈妈	māma	n.	mother	3	你好	nǐ hǎo		hello	1
吗	ma	particle	(used to ask questions)	2	你们	nǐmen	pron.	you (plural)	1
买	mǎi	v.	buy	8	年	nián	n.	year	12
毛衣	máoyī	n.	sweater	8	年龄	niánlíng	n.	age	4
帽子	màozi	n.	hat	8	年轻	niánqīng	adj.	young	4
没问题	méi wèntí		no problem	6	牛仔裤	niúzǎikù	n.	jeans	8
没有	méiyǒu	v.	not have	7	女士	nǚshì	n.	Ms	1
每	měi	pron.	every, each	8	P 爬山	páshān	v.	climb a mountain	10
美国	Měiguó	n.	US	2	拍照	pāizhào	v.	take photos	10
妹妹	mèimei	n.	younger sister	3	排球	páiqiú	n.	volleyball	11
门口	ménkǒu	n.	entrance, doorway	7	派对	pàiduì	n.	party	6
秘书	mìshū	n.	secretary	3	跑步	pǎobù	v.	jog	7
明年	míngnián	n.	next year	6	朋友	péngyou	n.	friend	7

WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT	WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT
便宜	piányi	adj.	cheap	8	谁	shéi	pron.	who	4
漂亮	piàoliang	adj.	pretty	12	什么	shénme	pron.	what	1
乒乓球	pīngpāngqiú	n.	table tennis	11	生日	shēngrì	n.	birthday	6
平方米	píngfāngmǐ	measure word	square metre	9	生日卡	shēngrìkǎ	n.	birthday card	7
Q 七月	Qīyuè	n.	July	6	省	shěng	n.	province	5
骑	qí	v.	ride (bicycle, etc)	10	时候	shíhou	n.	time	11
其他	qítā	pron.	others, other	11	时间	shíjiān	n.	time	7
千	qiān	num.	thousand	12	实习	shíxí	v.	work as an intern	12
钱	qián	n.	money	8	市	shì	n.	city	5
前边	qiánbian	n.	front	9	事	shì	n.	thing, matter	7
潜水	qiánshuǐ	v.	dive	11	试	shì	v.	try	8
请	qǐng	interj./v.	please, invite	1	是	shì	v.	be	1
请问	qǐngwèn		may I ask, excuse me	1	收到	shōudào	v.	receive	5
球	qiú	n.	ball, ball game	11	收件箱	shōujiànxiāng	n.	inbox	5
区	qū	n.	district	5	手机	shǒujī	n.	mobile phone	5
曲棍球	qūgùnqiú	n.	hockey	11	售货员	shòuhuòyuán	n.	shop assistant	8
去	qù	v.	go	6	书	shū	n.	book	6
去年	qùnián	n.	last year	6	书店	shūdiàn	n.	bookshop	8
裙子	qúnzi	n.	skirt	8	暑假	shǔjià	n.	summer holiday	10
R 然后	ránhòu	conj.	then	10	帅	shuài	adj.	handsome	4
人	rén	n.	people	2	双	shuāng	measure word	pair	8
认识	rènshi	v.	know, get to know	1	说	shuō	v.	say	12
日	rì	n.	date (written)	6	宿舍	sùshè	n.	dormitory	9
日本	Rìběn	n.	Japan	2	岁	suì	n.	year(s) old	4
S 三里屯	Sānlǐtún	n.	Sanlitun, a place in Beijing	10	T 他	tā	pron.	he, him	3
商店	shāngdiàn	n.	shop	9	它	tā	pron.	it	10
上班	shàngbān	v.	go to work	6	她	tā	pron.	she, her	3
上个	shànggè		last	8	他们	tāmen	pron.	they, them	2
上海	Shànghǎi	n.	Shanghai	4	太	tài	adv.	very, too	7
上午	shàngwǔ	n.	morning	7	太太	tàitai	n.	Mrs	1

WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT	WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT
泰国	Tàiguó	n.	Thailand	2	现在	xiànzài	n.	now	4
踢	tī	v.	play (with feet), kick	11	香港	Xiānggǎng	n.	Hong Kong	12
T恤	tīxù	n.	T-shirt	8	想	xiǎng	v.	think, want	11
体育场	tǐyùchǎng	n.	stadium, sports ground	11	小姐	xiǎojiě	n.	Miss	1
条	tiáo	measure word		8	小时	xiǎoshí	n.	hour	11
跳舞	tiàowǔ	v.	dance	11	鞋	xié	n.	shoes	8
听	tīng	v.	listen	7	写	xiě	v.	write	7
停车场	tíngchēchǎng	n.	car park	10	谢谢	xièxie	v.	thank you	5
同学	tóngxué	n.	schoolmate	1	新	xīn	adj.	new	5
头发	tóufa	n.	hair	4	新加坡	Xīnjiāpō	n.	Singapore	12
退出	tuìchū	v.	exit, go back	5	新西兰	Xīnxīlán	n.	New Zealand	2
W 晚饭	wǎnfàn	n.	dinner	7	星期	xīngqī	n.	week	6
晚上	wǎnshàng	n.	evening	7	星期二	Xīngqī’ èr	n.	Tuesday	6
往	wǎng	prep.	towards	9	星期六	Xīngqīliù	n.	Saturday	6
网球	wǎngqiú	n.	tennis	11	星期日	Xīngqīrì	n.	Sunday (written)	6
围巾	wéijīn	n.	scarf	8	星期三	Xīngqīsān	n.	Wednesday	6
问	wèn	v.	ask	1	星期四	Xīngqīsì	n.	Thursday	6
问卷	wènjuàn	n.	questionnaire	11	星期天	Xīngqītiān	n.	Sunday (spoken)	6
我	wǒ	pron.	I, me	1	星期五	Xīngqīwǔ	n.	Friday	6
我们	wǒmen	pron.	we, us	6	星期一	Xīngqīyī	n.	Monday	6
五月	Wǔyuè	n.	May	6	姓	xìng	v./n.	surname, family name	1
X 西安	Xī' ān	n.	Xi'an	12	性别	xìngbié	n.	gender	11
西边	xībian	n.	west	9	姓名	xìngmíng	n.	full name	4
悉尼	Xīní	n.	Sydney	2	熊猫	xióngmāo	n.	panda	4
希望	xīwàng	v.	hope	11	修理工	xiūlìgōng	n.	mechanic, repairman	3
喜欢	xǐhuan	v.	like	4	休闲	xiūxián	n./v.	leisure, have leisure	11
洗手间	xǐshǒujiān	n.	toilet, washroom	9	需要	xūyào	v.	need	10
下个	xiàge		next	11	学	xué	v.	study, learn	6
下午	xiàwǔ	n.	afternoon	7	学生	xuésheng	n.	student	3
先生	xiānsheng	n.	Mr	9	学校	xuéxiào	n.	school	3

WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT	WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT
Y 颜色	yánsè	n.	colour	10	运动	yùndòng	n.	sports	7
演员	yǎnyuán	n.	actor, actress	4	运动员	yùndòngyuán	n.	athlete	4
要	yào	v.	want	7	Z 在	zài	prep.	at, in	2
药店	yàodiàn	n.	pharmacy	9	早上好	zǎoshang hǎo		good morning	2
爷爷	yéye	n.	grandfather	7	怎么	zěnme	pron.	how	9
也	yě	adv.	also	3	怎么样	zěnmeyàng	pron.	how about	6
野营	yěyíng	v.	go camping	12	照片	zhàopiàn	n.	photo	3
一点儿	yídiǎnr	quantifier	a little	8	这	zhè	pron.	this	3
衣服	yīfu	n.	clothes	8	这边	zhèbian	pron.	this way	8
一起	yìqǐ	adv.	together	7	这个	zhège	pron.	this	7
医生	yīshēng	n.	doctor	3	这儿	zhèr	pron.	here	9
一些	yīxiē	quantifier	some	10	这里	zhèlǐ	pron.	here	8
医院	yīyuàn	n.	hospital	3	真	zhēn	adv.	really, so	4
一月	Yīyuè	n.	January	6	真的	zhēn de		really	6
以后	yǐhòu	n.	after	12	知道	zhīdào	v.	know	4
意大利	Yìdàilì	n.	Italy	10	只	zhǐ	adv.	only	12
音乐	yīnyuè	n.	music	7	志愿者	zhìyuànzhě	n.	volunteer	12
音乐会	yīnyuèhuì	n.	concert	7	中餐	Zhōngcān	n.	Chinese food	6
银行	yínháng	n.	bank	9	中国	Zhōngguó	n.	China	2
印度	Yìndù	n.	India	2	中文	Zhōngwén	n.	Chinese	1
应该	yīnggāi	modal v.	should	12	中午	zhōngwǔ	n.	noon	7
英格兰	Yīnggélán	n.	England	11	周末	zhōumò	n.	weekend	7
英国	Yīngguó	n.	UK	2	主意	zhǔyi	n.	idea	12
英语	Yīngyǔ	n.	English	7	住	zhù	v.	live	2
赢	yíng	v.	win	11	自行车	zìxíngchē	n.	bicycle	10
邮局	yóujú	n.	post office	9	走	zǒu	v.	walk, go	9
游览	yóulǎn	v.	go sightseeing	10	足球	zúqiú	n.	football	11
游泳	yóuyǒng	v.	swim	11	最	zuì	adv.	most	4
有	yǒu	v.	have	7	昨天	zuótiān	n.	yesterday	6
有名	yǒumíng	adj.	famous	8	左右	zuǒyòu	n.	about	9
远	yuǎn	adj.	far away	8	坐	zuò	v.	take (a vehicle)	10
月	yuè	n.	month	6	做	zuò	v.	do	3

Discover China

STUDENT'S BOOK ONE 学生用书1

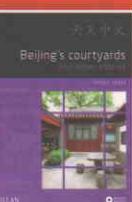
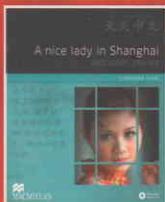
No one could claim that learning Chinese is easy. *Discover China* recognizes the challenges that face students of the Chinese language and applies teaching and learning approaches to make learning effective, meaningful and enjoyable.

Discover China is a four-level Mandarin Chinese course specially designed for beginner to intermediate level students and employs a communicative approach to language learning. Emphasis is placed on pair work, group work and on a wide variety of speaking and listening activities to help students become confident Chinese language speakers.

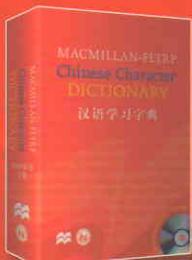
- **A communicative approach** lets students learn by using the language in real-life situations, providing them with the tools they need to communicate in Chinese naturally
- **Language in context** presents key vocabulary and language points in situations where students will encounter them in real life
- **Structured, effective learning** based on the sequence 'presentation, practice and production' has activities move from controlled practice to personalized tasks, which facilitates effective learning of the language
- **Inductive grammar teaching** encourages students to discover the language rules of Chinese for themselves by identifying the patterns in targeted language samples
- **Systematic vocabulary and grammar development** through topic-based practice and extension exercises. The lexical syllabus is based on levels 1-4 of the HSK Proficiency Test and the grammatical syllabus takes students up to the Vantage level (level B2) of the Common European Framework
- **Supported by free online resources** including teacher's books, assessment tasks, unit quizzes and extra character writing sheets – the support materials allow both teacher-guided learning in the classroom and self-teaching at a pace suited to the individual student

Components of *Discover China* levels 1, 2, 3 and 4:

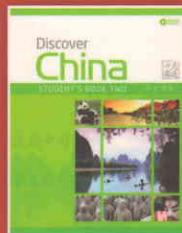
- Comprehensive Student's Book + Audio CD
- Workbook + Audio CD
- Supportive resource website: www.mydiscoverchina.com



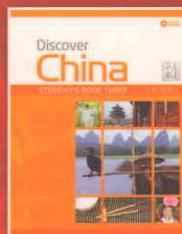
Tiantian Zhongwen
graded readers



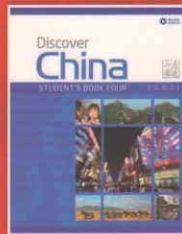
Macmillan-FLTRP
Chinese Character Dictionary



Student's Book 2



Student's Book 3



Student's Book 4



MACMILLAN



БИБЛИО-ГЛОБУС
Москва Мясницкая 6/3 стр.1 Тел: 781-19-00
http://www.biblio-globus.ru 628-35-87
628-46-80